





CAPT<sup>N</sup> JAMES COOK.

F. R. S.

*W. Colclough sculp.*

*Published Aug<sup>r</sup> 23<sup>th</sup> 1784, by J. Fielding Printer near Row.*

A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
P A C I F I C O C E A N ;  
Undertaken by Command of his MAJESTY,  
FOR MAKING  
D I S C O V E R I E S  
IN THE  
N O R T H E R N H E M I S P H E R E :

Performed under the Direction of  
Captains COOK, CLERKE, and GORE,  
In the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780.

Being a copious, comprehensive, and satisfactory Abridgement of the

V O Y A G E

WRITTEN BY

Captain JAMES COOK, F. R. S.

AND

Captain JAMES KING, LL.D. and F.R.S.

Illustrated with CUTS,

In F O U R V O L U M E S.

V O L. I.



L O N D O N :

Printed for JOHN FIELDING, Pater-noster-Row.

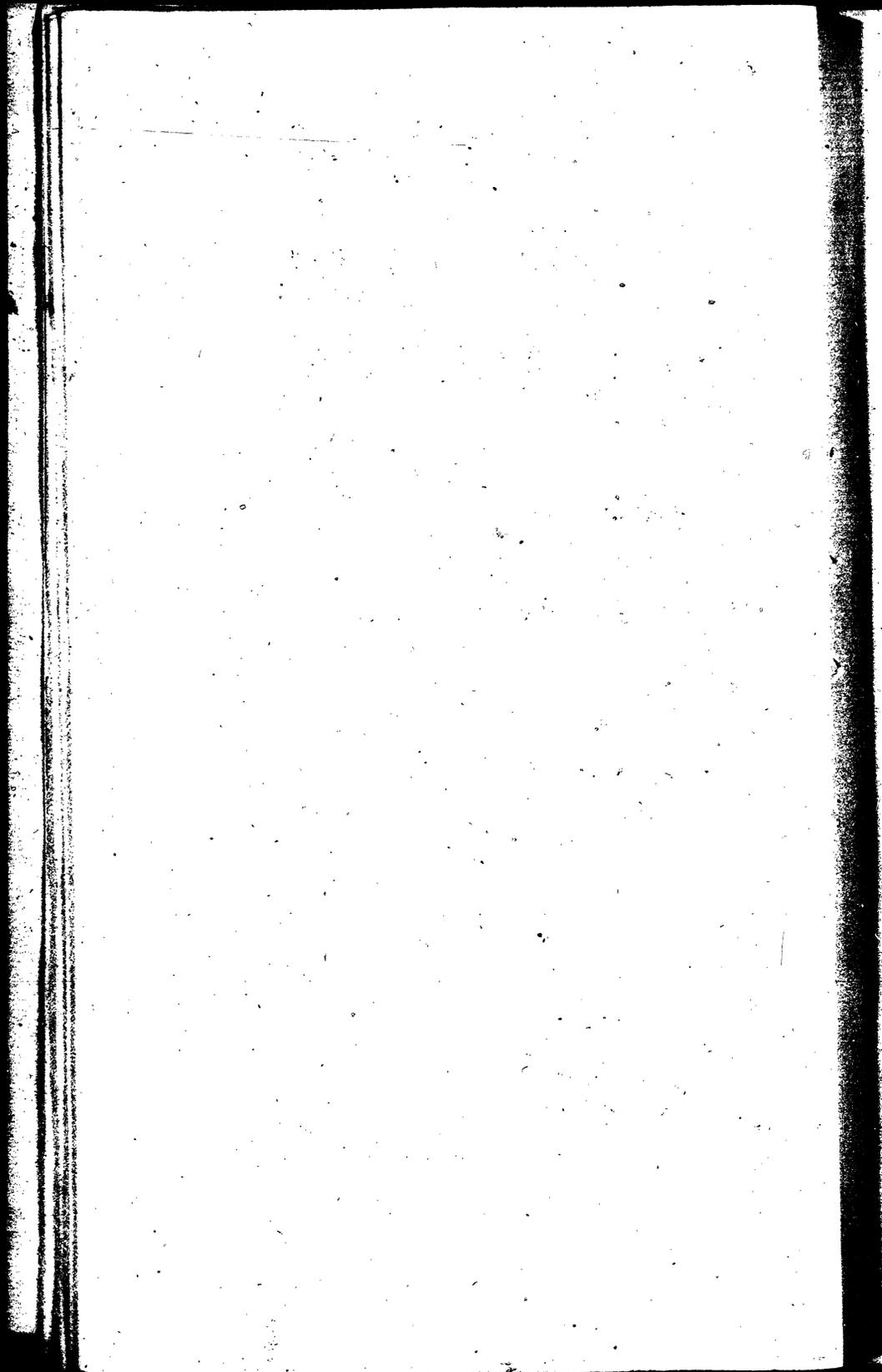
MDCCLXXXV.

NW  
970P  
C771  
3d  
Lond.  
1785  
v.1

NW  
970P  
C771  
v.1 2



TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE  
LORD VISCOUNT HOWE,  
AND THE OTHER  
LORDS COMMISSIONERS  
FOR EXECUTING THE  
OFFICE OF LORD HIGH ADMIRAL  
OF  
G R E A T - B R I T A I N,  
CAPTAIN COOK'S VOYAGE  
TO THE  
P A C I F I C O C E A N,  
IS,  
WITH GREAT DEFERENCE,  
INSCRIBED, BY  
THEIR LORDSHIPS  
MOST OBEDIENT AND  
DEVOTED SERVANTS,  
THE EDITORS.



## I N T R O D U C T I O N.

**T**O do justice to the beginnings of discovery, we must ascribe to the Dutch the merit of being our harbingers; though we afterwards went beyond them, even in their own track. And how successfully his Majesty's ships have penetrated into the obscurest recesses of the South Pacific Ocean, will appear from a recital of their various and extensive operations, which have adjusted the geography of so considerable a part of the globe.

The several lands, mentioned to have been discovered by preceding navigators, whether Spanish or Dutch, have been diligently sought after; and most of those which appeared to be of any consequence, found out and visited; when every method was put in practice to correct former mistakes, and supply former deficiencies.

But, besides perfecting the discoveries of their predecessors, our late navigators have

vi      I N T R O D U C T I O N .

added a long catalogue of their own, to enrich geographical knowledge. By repeatedly traversing the Pacific Ocean, within the south tropic, a seeming endless profusion of habitable spots of land was found, Islands interpersed through the amazing space of fourscore degrees of longitude, either separately scattered, or grouped in numerous clusters; and such ample accounts have we received, both of them and their inhabitants, that, to make use of Captain Cook's own words, we *Have left little more to be done in those parts.*

Byron, Wallis, and Cartaret, all contributed towards increasing our knowledge of the isles in the Pacific Ocean, within the limits of the Southern tropic; but how far that ocean extended to the west, by what lands it was bounded on that side, and the connections of those lands with former discoveries, remained unknown, till Captain Cook, after his first voyage, brought back a satisfactory decision of this important question. With wonderful skill and perseverance, amidst perplexities, difficulties, and dangers, he traced this coast almost two thousand miles, from the  $38^{\circ}$  of south latitude, cross the tropic, to its northern extremity, within

2

I N T R O D U C T I O N.    vii

10° and a half of the equinoctial, where it joined the land already explored by the Dutch, which they have denominated New Holland.

When the recesses of the globe are investigated, in order to promote general knowledge, and not with a prospect of enlarging private dominion; when we traverse the globe to visit new tribes of our fellow-creatures, as friends, wishing to learn their existence, for the express purpose of bringing them within the pale of the offices of humanity, and to relieve their wants, by communicating to them our superior attainments; the voyages projected by his gracious Majesty George the Third, and carried into execution by Captain Cook, have not, it is presumed, been entirely useless. Some rays of light must have been darted on the Friendly, Society, and Sandwich islands, by our repeated intercourse with them. Their stock of ideas must naturally be enlarged, and new materials must have been furnished them for the exercise of their reason, by the uncommon objects we exhibited to them.

Convinced, by comparing themselves to their English visitors, of their extreme inferiority,

viii INTRODUCTION.

feriority, they will probably endeavour to emerge from it, and to rise nearer to a level with those, who left behind them so many proofs of their generosity and humanity. The useful animals and vegetables introduced amongst them, will certainly contribute to the comforts and enjoyments of life.

When Great-Britain was first visited by the Phœnicians, the inhabitants were painted savages, much less civilized than those of Tongataboo, or Otaheite; and it is not impossible, but that our late voyages may, in process of time, spread the blessings of civilization amongst the numerous islanders of the South Pacific Ocean, and be the means of abolishing their abominable repasts, and almost equally abominable sacrifices.

# C O N T E N T S.

## B O O K I.

TRANSACTIONS FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE VOYAGE, TILL OUR DEPARTURE FROM NEW-ZEALAND.

### C H A P. I.

*Captains Cook and Clerke appointed to the Resolution and Discovery—Preparations for the Voyage—Sail from Deptford to Long Reach—Are visited there by the Earl of Sandwich and others—Proceed to Plymouth—Employments there—Number of Officers and Men in each Ship—Departure of the Resolution.* Page i

### C H A P. II.

*The Resolution proceeds to Teneriffe—Reception there—Captain Cook visits the Governor—Description of Santa Cruz Road—Ample Supplies to be obtained—Some Account of the Island, and of the Cities of Santa Cruz and Laguna—Agriculture—Natural History—Air—Climate—Produce—Description of the Inhabitants.* 8

### C H A P. III.

*Departure from Teneriffe—Danger of the Ship from the sunken Rocks near Bonavista—Isle of Mayo—Necessary Precautions against Rain and Heat in the Neighbourhood of the Equator—Position of the Coast of Brazil—Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope—Captain Cook's Reception there—Loses some of his Sheep—Other Transactions at the Cape—Junction of the Discovery—Account of Mr. Anderson's Journey up the Country.* 16

VOL. I.—N<sup>o</sup> 1.

b

C H A P.

## C H A P. IV.

*The Resolution and Discovery leave the Cape of Good Hope—See two Islands, named Prince Edward's Islands—Description of their Appearance—Visit Kerguelen's Land—Arrive at Christmas Harbour—Take in Water there—Discover an Inscription—Description of Christmas Harbour.*

Page 26

## C H A P. V.

*Depart from Christmas Harbour—Range along the Coast—Cape Cumberland, Cumberland Bay, Point Pringle, Howe's Foreland, &c. described—Remarkable Beds of Rock-weed—Danger from Shoals—Arrive at Port Palliser—Cape George described—Mr. Anderson's Natural History of the Animals, Plants, Soil, &c. of Kerguelen's Land.*

35

## C H A P. VI.

*Passage of the Ships from Kerguelen's to Van Diemen's Land—The Resolution damaged by a Squall—Arrival in Adventure Bay—Various Interviews with the Inhabitants—Description of their Persons, Dress, Manners, and Customs—Mr. Anderson's Remarks on the Character and Language of the Natives, and on the various Productions of the Country.*

47

## C H A P. VII.

*Course to New-Zealand—Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound—Intercourse with the New-Zealanders—Their Dexterity in building Huts—Information with regard to the Massacre of Captain Furneaux's People—Two violent Storms—Account of Kaboora, who headed the Party that killed our People—Of the two Youths who accompany us on board—Captain Cook's Observations on the Inhabitants of New-Zealand.*

60

C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The Country near Queen Charlotte's Sound described—The Fertility of the Soil—Temperature of the Climate—Rain and Winds—Plants—Birds—Fish—Animals—Description of the Persons of the Inhabitants—Dress—Ornaments—Buildings—Canoes or Boats—Food, and Method of Cookery—Arts—Weapons—Horrid Cruelty to their Enemies, whose Bodies they mangle and eat—Various other Customs.* Page 78

---

## B O O K II.

CONTAINING OUR ADVENTURES FROM OUR DEPARTURE FROM NEW-ZEALAND, TILL OUR ARRIVAL AT OTAHEITE, OR THE SOCIETY ISLANDS.

## C H A P. I.

*Course of the Voyage—Behaviour of the two New-Zealand Youths on board—The Island of Mangeea discovered—Account of the Persons and Dress of the Inhabitants—Mourooa and his Companion described—Figure of a Mangeean Canoe—The Coast of the Island examined—Impracticability of landing—Transactions with the Natives—Description of the Island—Disposition and Manners of the Mangeeans.* Page 93

## C H A P. II.

*An Island named Wateoo discovered—Visits from the Inhabitants on board the Ships—Their Persons and Dress described—The Coast of the Island examined—Lieutenants Gore and Burney, Mr. Anderson and Omai, sent on Shore—Mr. Anderson's*

b 2

*son's Account of their Reception—They are introduced to three Chiefs—Dance of twenty young Women described—Omai's Apprehensions of being roasted—The Islanders send Provisions on board—Further Description of the Natives—Of their double-Canoes—Trees and Plants—Omai's Expedient to prevent being detained on Shore—He meets with three of his Countrymen—Account of their distressful Voyage—Additional Remarks relative to Watecoo.* Page 104

## C H A P. III.

*Otakootaia visited—Description of the Island, and its Produce—Birds—Fishes—Visit Hervey's Island—Discover it to be inhabited—The Inhabitants refuse to come on board—Their Propensity to Theft—Their Manners, Persons, Dress, Canoes, &c.—Make a fruitless Attempt to land—Bear away for the Friendly Islands—Two Islets of Palmerston's Island touched at—Description of the Islets, their Produce, &c.—Refreshments procured there—Proceed to the Friendly Islands.* 125

## C H A P. IV.

*Barter with the Natives of Komango and other Islands, for Provisions, &c.—Arrival at Annamooka—Variety of Transactions there—A Visit received from Feenou, a principal Chief from Tongataboo—His Reception in the Island—Dines frequently on board the Resolution—Several Instances of the pilfering Disposition of the Natives—Punishments inflicted on them—Account of Annamooka—Proceed to Hapae.* 141

## C H A P. V.

*Arrival at Hapae—Friendly Reception there—Taipa harangues the People—Exhorts them not*

*to steal, &c.—Presents and Solemnities—Entertainment—Single Combats with Clubs—Wrestling—Boxing—Female Boxing—Marines exercised—A Dance by Men—Fire-Works—Night Entertainments, consisting of Singing and Dancing by Men and Women.* Page 158

## C H A P. VI.

*Captain Cook makes an Excursion into Lefooga—Description of that Island—Occurrences there—A false Report propagated—A Female Oculist—Singular Method of Shaving—The Ships are removed to another Station—A remarkable artificial Mount and Stone—Description of Hoolaiwa—Account of Poulabo, King of the Friendly Isles—The Commodore accompanies him on Shore—Departure from the Hapæe Islands—Kotoo described—The Ships return to Annamooka—Meeting of Poulabo and Feenou—Both the Ships strike on the Rocks—Arrival at Tongataboo.* 171

## C H A P. VII.

*Favourable Reception at Tongataboo—Distribution of Pork, Yams, and Kava among the King's Attendants—The Ships supplied with Water—The Observatory erected—The Natives flock to our People from all Quarters—Excursion of our Captains to see Mareewagee—Their Disappointment—Description of the Village where the Chiefs reside—Interviews with Mareewagee and Toobou—Presents from the King's Son—A curious Work of Art—Process of manufacturing Cloth—A grand Haiva given by Mareewagee—Exhibition of Fireworks—Wrestling—Boxing—Presents of Animals to the Chiefs—Poulabo, Feenou, &c. confined—The King's Present, and Haiva.* 189

C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Some Officers plundered of their Muskets, and other Articles, by the Natives—Omai complains to the King of this Outrage—Consequences that it was probable might attend it—A Visit to Poulabo—Description of a Fiatooka—Country Entertainment at Poulabo's House—His Mourning Ceremony—Beastly Method of preparing Kava—Account of Onevy—Messrs. King and Anderson visit Futtasuihe—Entertained by him—Method of dressing Hogs, and carving them—Manner of passing the Night—Observations on the Country—Prepare for Departure—Description of the Island, its Animals, Vegetables, &c.* Page 219

## C H A P. IX.

*Strange Solemnity at Moota, called Natche, in Honour of the King's Son—Description of many extraordinary Processions and Ceremonies during the first Day—Manner of supping and spending the Evening at the King's House—Description of the second Day's Ceremony—Captain Cook ventures himself in the Midst of the Assembly—His Reception there—Arrival at Eooa—Some Account of that Island—Weigh Anchor, and turn through the Channel.* 249

## C H A P. X.

*Quit the Friendly Islands with Regret—Time not misemployed in visiting the Friendly Islands—Variety of Refreshments to be procured there—Number of Islands, among which are Keppel's and Boscawen's Islands—Account of Vavaoo, Hamoe, and Feejee—Method of calculating Distances by Time—Omai incapable of giving exact Information—Persons of the Inhabitants described—  
Their*

*Their Diseases—Character—Manner of wearing the Hair in both Sexes—Of puncturing and painting their Bodies—Their Habits—Ornaments, &c.*

Page 267

### CHAP. XI.

*Various Employments of the Women of the Friendly Islands—Occupations of the Men—Agriculture—Manner of building their Houses—Their Furniture—Canoes—Working-Tools—Cordage—Fishing-Tackle—Instruments of Music—Weapons—Vegetable and Animal Food—Methods of Cooking—Diversions—Marriage—Mourning Ceremonies—Custom of cutting off their little Finger—Their Deities—Sentiments concerning the Soul, and a future State—Their Fiatookas—Form of Government—Power of the Chiefs—Mode of paying Homage to the King—Taboo incurred by it—Precaution against Famine—Of the Tanswabas—Language—Tides.*

285

## BOOK III.

OCURRENCES AT OTAHEITE AND THE SOCIETY ISLES; AND PROSECUTION OF THE VOYAGE TO THE COAST OF NORTH-AMERICA.

### CHAP. I.

*Heavy Squall—The Island of Toobouai discovered—Its Situation, Extent, and Produce—Description of the Persons, Dress, and Canoes, of its Inhabitants—Arrival in Obeitepeha Bay at Otaheite—Omai's Reception—His imprudent Con-*

*duet*—Account of two Spanish Ships which had twice visited Otabeite—Great Demand for red Feathers—Captain Cook visits a Chief, who was said by Omai to be the God of Bolabola—Account of the House erected by the Spaniards—Inscriptions—Allowance of Grog lessened—The Captain's Interview with Wabeiadova—Description of a Toopapoo—An Entusiast—The Ships anchor in Matavai Bay. Page 308

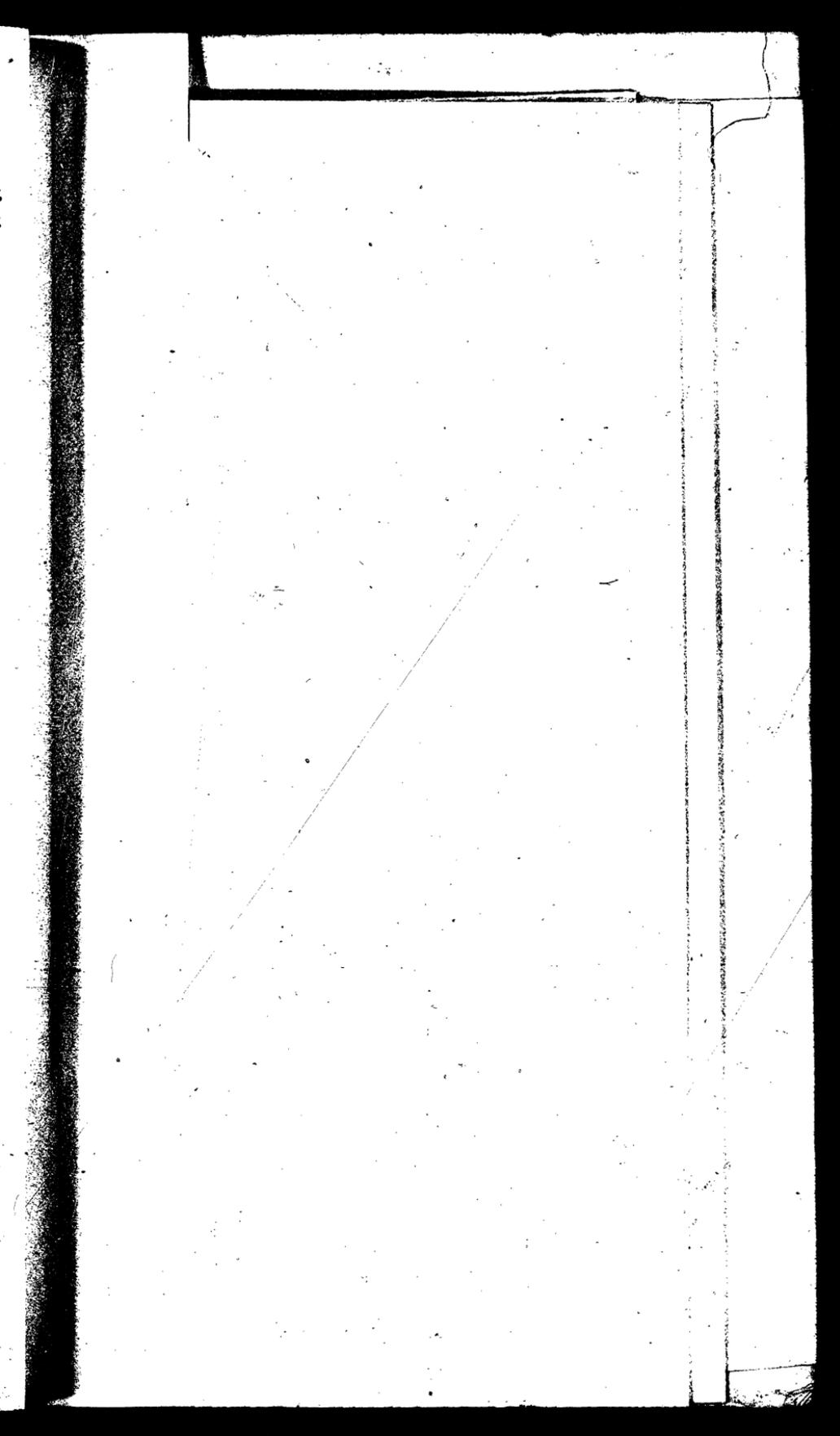
## CHAP. II.

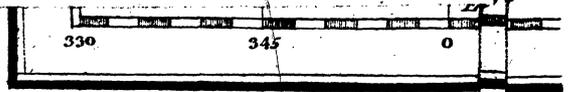
*Interview with Otoo, King of Otabeite—Imprudent Behaviour of Omai—Various Animals landed—Occupations on Shore—Visit from a Native who had been at Lima—Account of Oedidee—False Report—The Islanders make a precipitate Retreat, but soon return—A Rebellion in Eimeo—Council of Chiefs—War with Eimeo resolved on—A human Sacrifice—Circumstantial Description of that Solemnity—The great Mōrai at Attabooroō described—Behaviour of the Natives during the Ceremony—Particular Customs. 329*

## CHAP. III.

*Re-embark for Matavai—Conference with Towha respecting the human Sacrifice—Description of the Heevas—Dinner given by Omai—Exhibition of Fire-works—Remarkable Method of making a Present of Cloth—Manner of preserving, for many Months, the dead Body of a Chief—Another human Sacrifice offered—Riding on Horseback, Matter of great Astonishment to the Natives—Otoo's great Attention to prevent Thefts, &c.—Animals given to him by Captain Cook—Audience given to Etary, &c.—Manner of fighting two War Canoes—Naval Power, &c. 354*

A. V O Y.





by

A  
V O Y A G E  
T O T H E  
P A C I F I C O C E A N .

B O O K I .

TRANSACTIONS FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE  
VOYAGE, TILL OUR DEPARTURE FROM NEW  
ZEALAND.

---

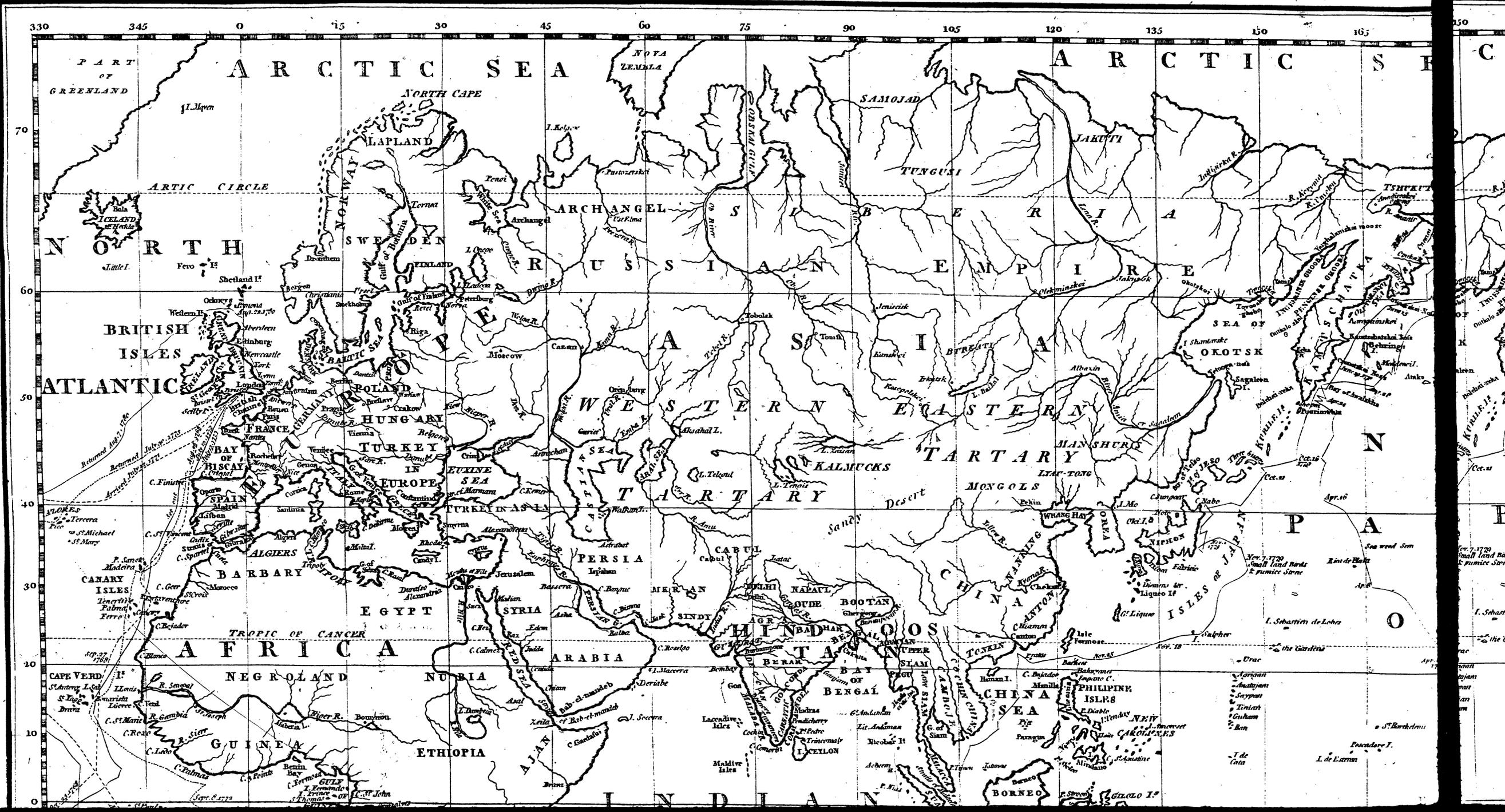
C H A P . I .

*Captains Cook and Clerke appointed to the Resolu-  
tion and Discovery—Preparations for the Voy-  
age—Sail from Deptford to Long Reach—Are  
visited there by the Earl of Sandwich and others  
—Proceed to Plymouth—Employments there—  
Number of Officers and Men in each Ship—De-  
parture of the Resolution.*

**O**N the 10th of February, 1776, Captain  
Cook went on board his Majesty's sloop  
the Resolution, and hoisted the pendant,  
having received a commission to command her  
the preceding day. The Discovery, of three  
hundred tons, was, at the same time, prepared

# A GENERAL CHART

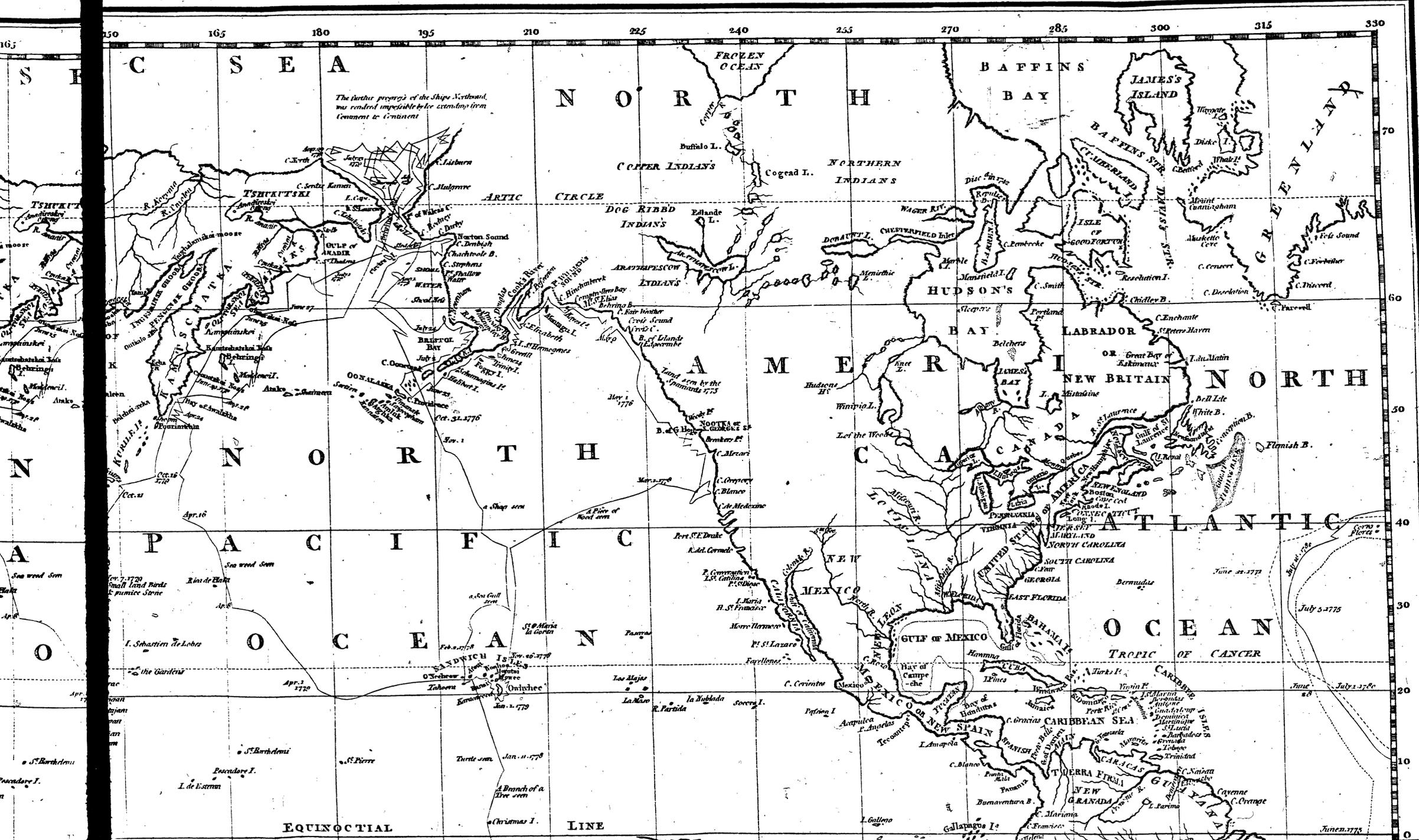
Exhibiting the DISCOVERIES made by Capt<sup>n</sup> JAMES COOK in this and his two preceeding Voyages



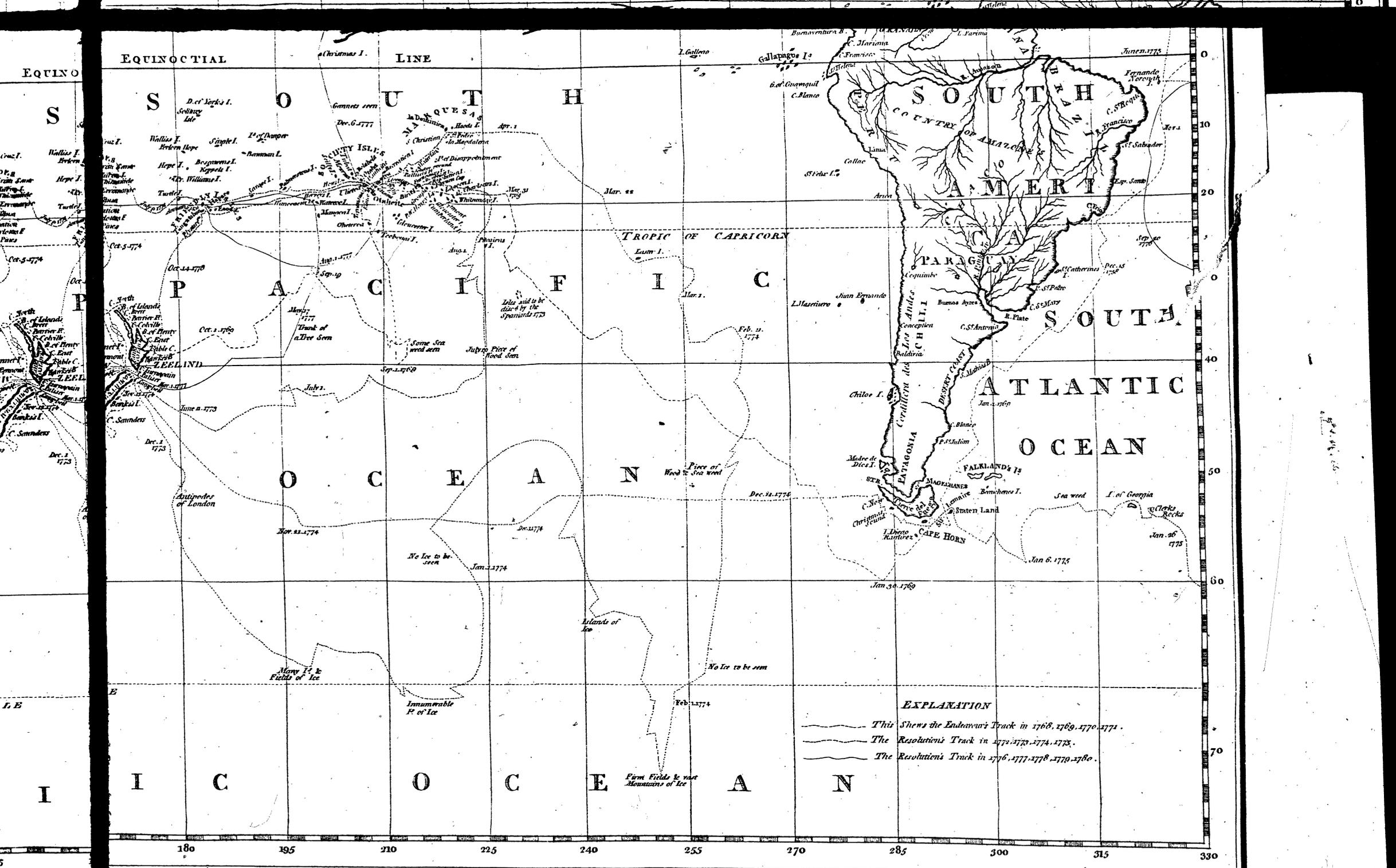
# CHART:

preceding VOYAGES; with the TRACKS of the SHIPS under his Command.

Engraved for Cook's Voyage, Octavo Edinon.







Fielding N° 23 Pat. noster Row, London.

Batchell sculp.

for the service, and Captain Clerke appointed to the command of her. It may be necessary to observe, that Captain Clerke had been Captain Cook's Second Lieutenant on board the Resolution, in his second voyage round the world.

These two ships were then equipping in the dock at Deptford, for a voyage to make farther discoveries in the Pacific Ocean, under the direction of Captain Cook.

The Resolution was hauled into the river on the 9th of March to complete her rigging, and take in stores and provisions for the voyage. Both ships, indeed, were abundantly supplied with every thing requisite for a voyage of such duration. We sailed on the 29th of May, and arrived the next day at Long Reach, where our powder and shot, and other ordnance stores, were received.

On the 8th of June, while we lay in Long Reach, we had the satisfaction of a visit from the Earl of Sandwich, Sir Hugh Palliser, and others of the Board of Admiralty, to examine whether every thing had been completed pursuant to their orders, and to the convenience of those who were to embark. They honoured Captain Cook with their company to dinner on that day; and were saluted, on their coming on board, and on their going ashore, with seventeen guns and three cheers.

To

To convey some permanent benefit to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other islands which we might happen to visit, his Majesty commanded some useful animals to be taken out. On the 10th we took on board a bull, two cows with their calves, and some sheep; with hay and corn for their support. We were also furnished with a sufficient quantity of our valuable European garden seeds, which might add fresh supplies of food to the vegetable productions of our newly-discovered islands.

Both the ships, by order of the Board of Admiralty, were amply supplied with an extensive assortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourse with the inhabitants of such new countries as we might discover. With respect to our own wants, nothing was refused us that might be conducive to health, comfort, or convenience.

Those at the head of the naval department were equally solicitous to render our voyage of public utility; accordingly we received on board, the next day, variety of astronomical and nautical instruments, which the Board of Longitude intrusted to Captain Cook and Mr. King, his Second Lieutenant; they having engaged to supply the place of a professed observator. The Board, likewise, put into their possession the time-keeper, which Captain Cook had carried out in his last voyage, and which had performed so well. It

was constructed by Mr. Kendal, and was a copy of Mr. Harrison's. Another time-keeper, and the same assortment of astronomical and other instruments; were put on board the Discovery, for the use of Mr. William Bailey, a diligent and skilful observator, who was engaged to embark with Captain Clerke.

Mr. Anderson, Surgeon to Captain Cook, added to his professional abilities a great proficiency in natural history. He had already visited the South-Sea Islands in the same ship, and enabled the Captain to enrich his relation of the preceding voyage with useful and valuable remarks.

Though several young men, among the sea-officers, were capable of being employed in constructing charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coasts and head-lands, Mr. Webber was engaged to embark with Captain Cook, for the purpose of supplying the defects of written accounts, by taking accurate and masterly drawings of the most memorable scenes of our transactions.

The necessary preparations being completed, Captain Cook received orders to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the Discovery under his command. In consequence of which, he ordered Captain Clerke to carry his ship also round to Plymouth.

The

The Resolution, with the Discovery in company, sailed from Long Reach on the 15th of June, and anchored at the Nore the same evening. The Discovery proceeded the next day in obedience to Captain Cook's order, and the Resolution remained at the Nore till Captain Cook, who was then in London, should join her.

It being our intention to touch at Otaheite and the Society Islands, it had been determined to carry Omai back to his native country: accordingly Captain Cook and he set out from London early on the 24th, and reached Chatham between ten and eleven o'clock, where they dined with Commissioner Proby, who afterwards ordered his yacht to convey them to Sheerness, where the Captain's boat was waiting to take them on board the Resolution.

Though Omai left London with some degree of regret, when he reflected upon the favours and indulgences he had received, yet, when mention was made of his own islands, his eyes sparkled with joy. He entertained the highest ideas of this country and its inhabitants; but the pleasing prospect of returning home, loaded with what would be deemed invaluable treasures there, and of obtaining a distinguished superiority among his countrymen, operated so far as to suppress every uneasy sensation; and when he got on board the ship, he appeared to be quite happy.

Omai was furnished, by his Majesty, with quantities of every article that were supposed to be in estimation at Otaheite. He also received several presents from Lord Sandwich, Mr. Banks, and many others. Every method had, indeed, been employed, during his abode in England, and at his departure, to make him the instrument of conveying to his countrymen, an exalted opinion of British greatness and generosity.

About noon on the 25th we weighed anchor, and made sail for the Downs, with a gentle breeze at north-west by west. At nine the same day we anchored, with the North Foreland bearing south by east, and Margate Point south-west by south.

On the 26th, at two o'clock, we weighed, and stood round the Foreland; and at eight o'clock the same morning anchored in the Downs. Here Captain Cook received two boats on board, which had been built for him at Deal; and the next day, at two o'clock in the afternoon, we got under sail, but the breeze soon died away, and we anchored again. At ten o'clock the same night we weighed again, and proceeded down the channel.

We anchored at Plymouth Sound on the 30th, at three o'clock in the afternoon. The Discovery had arrived there three days before. We saluted Admiral Amherst, whose flag was flying on board the Ocean, and he returned the compliment.

We

We were employed on the 1st and 2d of July in replacing the water and provisions we had expended, and in receiving on board a supply of port wine. On the 8th Captain Cook received his instructions for the voyage, and an order to proceed to the Cape of Good Hope with the Resolution; with directions also to leave an order for Captain Clerke to follow him, as soon as he should join his ship, he being at that time in London.

The officers and men on board the Resolution (including marines) were one hundred and twelve, and those on board the Discovery were eighty.

On the 10th of July the proper persons came on board, and paid the officers and crew up to the 30th of last month. The petty officers and seamen received also two months wages in advance. Such indulgence to the latter is customary; but the payment of what was due to the superior officers, was in consideration of our peculiar situation, to enable us to defray the expence of furnishing ourselves with necessaries for a voyage of such uncommon duration.

In the morning of the 11th, Captain Cook delivered into the hands of Mr. Burney, First Lieutenant of the Discovery, Captain Clerke's sailing orders; a copy of which he also left with the commanding officer of his Majesty's ships at Plymouth, to be delivered to the Captain on his arrival. In the afternoon we weighed with the ebb,

and got out beyond all the shipping in the Sound, where we were detained most of the following day. At eight o'clock in the evening, we weighed again, and stood out of the Sound, with a gentle breeze at north-west by west.

---

## C H A P. II.

*The Resolution proceeds to Teneriffe—Reception there—Captain Cook visits the Governor—Description of Santa Cruz Road—Ample Supplies to be obtained—Some Account of the Island, and of the Cities of Santa Cruz and Laguna—Agriculture—Natural History—Air—Climate—Produce—Description of the Inhabitants.*

SOON after we came out of Plymouth Sound, the wind came more westerly, and blew fresh, which obliged us to ply down the channel; and we were not off the Lizard till the 14th at eight in the evening.

On the 16th at noon, the light-house of St. Agnes, on the Isles of Scilly, bore north-west by west, distant about seven or eight miles; and on the 17th and 18th, we were off Ushant.

On the 19th we stood westward till eight o'clock in the morning, when the wind shifted, and we tacked

tacked and stretched to the southward: here we beheld nine sail of large ships, which we supposed to be French men of war. On the 22d, at ten in the morning, we saw Cape Ortegual about four leagues distant.

We had calm weather on the 22d and 23d, and on the afternoon of the 24th, we passed Cape Finisterre, with a fine gale at north-north-east.

Captain Cook determined to touch at Teneriffe, to get a supply of hay and corn for the subsistence of his animals on board, as well as the usual refreshments for ourselves. We saw Teneriffe on the 31st of July, at four in the afternoon; and at day-light on the first of August, we sailed round the east point of that island, and anchored on the south side, in the road of Santa Cruz, about eight o'clock, in twenty-three fathoms water.

There were, riding in this road, a French frigate, two French brigantines, an English brigantine, and fourteen sail of Spanish ships.

Immediately after we had anchored, we received a visit from the master of the port, who asked the ship's name. Upon his retiring, Captain Cook sent an officer ashore, to present his respects to the Governor, and ask his permission to take in water, and to purchase such articles as were thought necessary. The Governor very politely complied with Captain Cook's request, and sent an officer on board to compliment him on his arrival. In the afternoon Captain Cook wait-

ed upon him, accompanied by some of his officers; and, before he returned to his ship, bespoke some corn and straw, ordered a quantity of wine, and made an agreement for a supply of water.

The road of Santa Cruz is situated on the south-east side of the island, before the town of the same name. It is said to be the principal road of Teneriffe for shelter, capacity, and the goodness of its bottom.

The water to supply the shipping, and for the use of the inhabitants of Santa Cruz, is derived from a rivulet that runs from the hills, which is conveyed into the town in wooden troughs. As these troughs were at this time repairing, fresh water was extremely scarce.

From the appearance of the country about Santa Cruz, it might naturally be concluded that Teneriffe is a barren spot: we were convinced, however, from the ample supplies we received, that it not only produced sufficient to supply its own inhabitants, but also enough to spare for visitors. Though wine is the chief produce of the island, beef may be had at about three-pence sterling a pound; the oxen, however, are small, lean, and boney. Sheep, goats, hogs, and poultry, may be had on terms equally reasonable. A great variety of fruits are to be had in plenty, as pears, figs, grapes, mulberries, musk-melons, &c. besides others that were not then in season. The pump-

pumpkins, potatoes, and onions, which grow here, are excellent.

Indian corn is produced on this island, and is sold at about three shillings and six-pence per bushel: the fruits and vegetables are, in general, very cheap. Though the inhabitants are but indifferently supplied with fish by the adjoining seas, they are engaged in a considerable fishery on the coast of Barbary, and the produce of it sells at a very moderate price.

Teneriffe is certainly a more eligible place than Madeira, for ships to touch at which are bound on long voyages; but the wine of the latter is infinitely superior to that of the former: the difference of their prices is almost as considerable as their qualities, for the best Teneriffe wine was sold for twelve pounds a pipe, whereas a pipe of the best Madeira was worth considerably more than double that sum.

Behind the town of Santa Cruz, the country rises gradually to a moderate height; afterwards it continues to rise south westward towards the celebrated pic of Teneriffe. But we were much disappointed in our expectations with respect to its appearance\*.

\* In Sparta's History of the Royal Society, page 200, &c. is an account of a journey to the top of the pic of Teneriffe. A modern traveller, viz. the Chevalier de Borda, who measured the height of this mountain in August 1776, makes it 12340 English feet.

The island, eastward of Santa Cruz, appears perfectly barren. Ridges of high hills run towards the sea, between which are deep vallies, terminating at mountains that run across and are higher than the former.

On the 1st of August in the afternoon, Mr. Anderson (Captain Cook's surgeon) went on shore to one of these vallies, intending to reach the top of the remoter hills, but time would not permit him to get farther than their foot. The lower hills produce great quantities of the *euphorbia canariensis*. The people on the spot imagine its juice to be so caustic as to erode the skin; but Mr. Anderson convinced them to the contrary, by thrusting his finger into a plant full of it. The inhabitants dry the bushes of *euphorbia*, and carry them home for fuel.

Santa Cruz, though not large, is a well-built city. Their churches have not a magnificent appearance without, but they are decent and tolerably handsome within.

Almost facing the stone pier, which runs into the sea from the town, is a marble column, lately erected, enriched with human figures which reflect honour to the statuary.

On the 2d of August, in the afternoon, Mr. Anderson and three others hired mules to ride to the city of Laguna, about the distance of four miles from Santa Cruz. They arrived there between five and six in the evening, but the fight  
of

of it did not reward us for our trouble, as the roads were very bad, and our cattle but indifferent. Though the place is extensive, it hardly deserves to be dignified with the name of a city. There is some good houses, but the disposition of the streets is very irregular. Laguna is larger than Santa Cruz, but much inferior to it in appearance.

The road from Santa Cruz to Laguna, runs up a steep barren hill; but, lower down, we saw some fig-trees and corn-fields. The corn, however, is not produced here without great labour, the ground being greatly encumbered with stones. Nothing else presented itself, deserving notice, except a few aloe plants in flower on the side of the road.

The laborious work in this island is chiefly performed by mules, horses being scarce, and reserved for the use of the officers. Oxen are also much employed here. Some hawks and parrots were seen, which were natives of the island; as also the sea-swallow, sea-gulls, partridges, swallows, canary-birds, and blackbirds. There are also lizards, locusts, and three or four sorts of dragon flies.

Mr. Anderson was informed, by a gentleman of acknowledged veracity, that a shrub is common here, agreeing exactly with the description given by Linnæus of the tea shrub, as growing in China and Japan. It is considered as a weed,  
and

and large quantities are rooted out of the vineyards every year. The Spaniards, however, who inhabit the island, sometimes make use of it, and ascribe to it all the qualities of the tea imported from China.

The same gentleman mentioned to Mr. Anderson another botanical curiosity, which is called the *impregnated lemon*. It is a distinct and perfect lemon enclosed within another.

A certain sort of grape growing here, is deemed an excellent remedy in phtisical complaints. The air and climate are remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to afford relief in such complaints. By residing at different heights in the island, it is in the power of any one to procure such a temperature of air as may be best suited to his constitution. He may continue where it is mild and salubrious, or he may ascend till the cold becomes intolerable. No person, it is said, can live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the pic, after the month of August.

Smoke continually issues from near the top of the pic, but they have had no earthquake or eruption since 1704, when the port of Garrachica was destroyed, being filled up by the rivers of burning lava that flowed into it; and houses are now built, where ships formerly lay at anchor.

The trade of Teneriffe is very considerable, forty thousand pipes of wine being annually made

there; which is consumed in the island, or made into brandy, and sent to the Spanish West-Indies. Indeed the wine is the only considerable article of the foreign commerce of Teneriffe, unless we reckon the large quantities of filtering stones brought from Grand Canary.

The race of inhabitants found here when the Spaniards discovered the Canaries, are no longer a distinct people, having intermarried with the Spanish settlers; their descendants, however, may be known, from their being remarkably tall, strong, and large-boned. The men are tawny, and the women are pale. The inhabitants, in general, of Teneriffe, are decent, grave, and civil; retaining that solemn cast which distinguishes those of their country from others. Though we are not of opinion that our manners are similar to those of the Spaniards, yet Omai declared, he did not think there was much difference. He said, indeed, that they did not appear to be so friendly as the English; and that their persons nearly resembled those of his countrymen.

## C H A P. III.

*Departure from Teneriffe—Danger of the Ship from the sunken Rocks near Bonavista—Isle of Mayo—Necessary Precautions against Rain and Heat in the Neighbourhood of the Equator—Position of the Coast of Brazil—Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope—Captain Cook's Reception there—Loses some of his Sheep—Other Transactions at the Cape—Junction of the Discovery—Account of Mr. Anderson's Journey up the Country.*

**H**AVING got our water and other articles on board, we weighed anchor on the 4th of August, quitted Teneriffe, and proceeded on our voyage.

On the 10th, at nine o'clock in the evening, we saw the island of Bonavista bearing south, distant about a league; though we then thought ourselves much farther off, but it soon appeared that we were mistaken; for, after hauling to the eastward, to clear the sunken rocks that lie near the south-east point of the island, we found ourselves close upon them, and barely weathered the breakers. Our situation was, for some minutes, so very alarming, that Captain Cook did not chuse to sound, as that might have increased the danger, without any possibility of lessening it.

Having

Having cleared the rocks, we steered between Bonavista and the island of Mayo, intending to look into Port Praya for the Discovery, as Captain Cook had told Captain Clerke that he should touch there. At one o'clock we saw the rocks south-west of Bonavista, bearing south-east, distant three or four leagues.

On Monday the 12th, at six o'clock in the morning, the isle of Mayo bore south-south-east, distant four or five leagues. We sounded, and found ground at sixty fathoms. At the distance of three or four miles from this island, we saw not the least appearance of vegetation; nothing presented itself to our view, but that lifeless brown, so common in unwooded countries under the torrid zone.

During our continuance among these islands, we had gentle breezes of wind, varying from the south-east to east, and some calms. On the 13th, at nine o'clock in the morning, we arrived before Port Praya, in the island of St. Jago, where two Dutch East-India ships, and a small brigantine, were at anchor. The Discovery not being there, we did not go in, but stood to the southward.

We lost the north-east trade-wind, the day after we left the Cape de Verde islands; and, on the 30th, got that which blows from the south east. The wind, during this interval, was principally in the south-west quarter. It generally blew a

gentle breeze, but sometimes fresh, and in squalls. We had few calms, and those of short duration. Between the latitude of  $12^{\circ}$ , and of  $7^{\circ}$  north, the weather was very gloomy, and frequently rainy; insomuch, that we were enabled to save as much water as filled the greatest part of our empty casks.

Every bad consequence is to be apprehended from these rains, and the close sultry weather accompanying them. Commanders of ships ought carefully to purify the air between decks with fires and smoke, and to oblige the people to change their cloaths at every opportunity. These precautions were strictly observed on board the Resolution and Discovery; and we enjoyed the advantage of it, having fewer sick than on either of Captain Cook's former voyages. Our ship, however, was very leaky in all her upper works. The sultry weather had opened her seams so wide, that the rain-water passed through as it fell. The officers in the gun-room were driven from their cabins, by the water that came through the sides, and hardly a man could lie dry in his bed. The caulkers were employed to repair these defects, as soon as we got into fair settled weather; but Captain Cook would not trust them over the sides while we were at sea.

On the 1st of September, we crossed the equator, in the longitude of  $27^{\circ} 38'$  west, and passed the afternoon in performing the old ceremony of

ducking those, who had not crossed the equator before. On the 8th, we were a little to the southward of Cape St. Augustine. We proceeded on our voyage, without any remarkable occurrence, till the 6th of October. Being then in the latitude of  $35^{\circ} 15'$  south, longitude  $7^{\circ} 45'$  west, we alternately met with light airs and calms for three successive days. For some days before we had seen albatrosses, and pintadoes, and we then saw three penguins. In consequence of this we sounded, but found no ground with a line of one hundred and fifty fathoms. We shot a few birds, one of which was a black petrel, about the size of a crow.

In the evening of the 8th, a bird, which the sailors call a noddy, settled on our rigging, and was taken. It was larger than a common English black-bird, and nearly of the same colour, except the upper part of the head, which was white. It was web-footed, had black legs, and a long black bill. Though it is said these birds never venture far from land, we knew of none nearer our station than Gough's or Richmond island, which could not be less than one hundred leagues. But, as the Atlantic ocean, southward of us, has been but little frequented, there may possibly be more islands than we know of.

A fresh gale from the north-west succeeded this calm weather, which continued two days. Afterwards we had variable light airs for about

twenty four hours, when the north-west wind returned, and blew fresh. On the 17th we saw the Cape of Good Hope, and, on the 18th, anchored in Table-bay, in four fathoms water.

After receiving the usual visit from the Master-attendant and the Surgeon, Captain Cook sent an officer to Baron Plettenberg, the Governor, and saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and was complimented, in return, with the same number. Two French East-India ships were in the bay, the one outward, and the other homeward-bound.

After having saluted, Captain Cook went on shore, accompanied by some of his officers, and waited on the Governor, the Lieutenant-governor, the Fiscal, and the Commander of the troops. These gentlemen received Captain Cook with the greatest civility; and the Governor, in particular, voluntarily promised him every assistance that the place afforded. Before Captain Cook returned on board, he ordered fresh meat, greens, &c. to be provided every day for the ship's company.

On the 22d we fixed our tents and observatory; the next day we began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to discover whether the watch had altered its rate. The caulkers were set to work to caulk the ship; and Captain Cook had concerted measures for supplying both ships with such provisions as were wanted; and, as the several articles for the Resolution were got ready, they were immediately conveyed on board.

The

The homeward-bound French ship sailed for Europe on the 26th, and by her we sent letters to England. The next day the Hampshire East-India ship, from Bencoolen, anchored in the bay.

On the 31st of October it blew excessively hard at south-east, and continued for three days. The Resolution was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale without dragging her anchors.

The storm ceased on the 3d of November, and on the 6th the Hampshire sailed for England, in which Captain Cook sent home an invalid. On the 10th, in the morning, the Discovery arrived in the bay. She sailed from Plymouth on the 1st of August, and would have been with us a week sooner, had not the late gale of wind blown her off the coast. Captain Clerke, on his passage from England, lost one of his marines, by falling over board. No other accident happened among his people, and they arrived in perfect health.

The next day, the Discovery wanting caulking, Captain Cook sent all his workmen on board her, and lent every other assistance to the Captain to expedite his supply of provisions and water.

Having, by the Governor's permission, taken our cattle on shore, on the night preceding the 14th, some dogs got in amongst the sheep, forced them out of the pen, killed four, and dispersed the rest. We recovered six of them the next day; but among those which were missing were two rams, and two of the finest ewes in the whole flock.

Though the Dutch frequently boast of the police at the Cape, yet the Captain's sheep evaded all the vigilance of the Fiscal's officers and people. At length, after much trouble and expence, by employing some of the lowest fellows of the place, we recovered all but the two ewes. One of the rams, however, was so miserably torn by the dogs, that we thought he would never recover.

Mr. Hemmy, the Lieutenant-governor, very obligingly offered to make up this loss, by giving Captain Cook a Spanish ram, out of some he had sent for from Lisbon; but the Captain declined the offer, thinking it would equally answer his purpose to take with him some of the Cape rams: in this, however, the Captain was mistaken. Mr. Hemmy had endeavoured to introduce European sheep at the Cape; but all his attempts were frustrated by the obstinacy of the country people, who highly esteemed their own breed, on account of their large tails; the fat of which sometimes produces more money than the whole carcass besides. Indeed, the most remarkable thing in the Cape sheep is the length and thickness of their tails, which weigh from ten to fifteen pounds.

While the ships were repairing for the prosecution of our voyage, Mr. Anderson, and some of our officers, made an excursion, to take a survey of the neighbouring country. Mr. Anderson

son relates their proceedings to the following effect :

In the forenoon of Saturday the 16th of November, he, and five others, set out in a waggon, to take a view of the country. They crossed the large plain to the eastward of the town, which is entirely a white sand, resembling that which is commonly found on beaches. At five in the afternoon they passed a large farm-house, some corn-fields and vineyards, situated beyond the plain, where the soil appeared worth cultivating. At seven they arrived at Stellenbosch, a colony, in point of importance, next to that of the Cape.

The village stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, about twenty miles to the eastward of Cape-Town, and consists of about thirty houses, which are neat and clean: a rivulet, and the shelter of some large oaks, planted at its first settling, form a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some thriving vineyards and orchards about the place, which seem to indicate an excellent soil, though perhaps much may be owing to the uncommon serenity of the air.

At this season of the year, Mr. Anderson could find but few plants in flower, and insects were very scarce. He and his companions left Stellenbosch the next morning, and soon arrived at the house they had passed on Saturday; Mr. Cloeder, the owner of which, having sent them an invitation to visit him, they were entertain-

ed by this gentleman with great politeness and hospitality. They were received with a band of music, which continued playing while they were at dinner; which, in that situation, might be reckoned elegant.

In the afternoon they crossed the country, and passed some large plantations. In the evening they arrived at a farm-house, which is said to be the first in the cultivated tract called the *Pearl*. Here they had a view of Drakenstein, the third colony of this country, which contains several little farms or plantations.

Plants and insects were as scarce here as at Stellenbosh, but there was a greater plenty of shrubs, or small trees, naturally produced, than they had before seen in the country.

On Tuesday the 19th, in the afternoon, they went to see a remarkable large stone, called by the inhabitants the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Diamond. It stands upon the top of some low hills, and is of an oblong shape, rounded on the top, and lying nearly south and north. The east and west sides are nearly perpendicular. The south end is not equally steep, but its greatest height is there; whence it declines gently to the north-part, by which they ascended, and had a very extensive prospect of the whole country.

The circumference of this stone is about half a mile, as they were half an hour walking round it, including allowances for stopping and a bad road.

road. Its height seems to equal the dome of St. Paul's church. Except some few fissures, it is one uninterrupted mass of stone. The stone is of that sort which mineralogists call *Saxum Conglutinatum*.

On the 20th, in the morning, they set out from the Pearl, and, going a different road, passed through an uncultivated country to the Tyger Hills, where they beheld some tolerable corn-fields. About noon, they stopped in a valley for refreshment, where they were plagued with a vast number of musquitoes; and, in the evening, arrived at the Cape-Town.

On Saturday the 23d, we got the observatory, clock, &c. on board. From the result of several calculations and observations, we had reason to conclude, that the watch, or time-piece, had performed well all the way from England.

## C H A P. IV.

*The Resolution and Discovery leave the Cape of Good Hope—See two Islands, named Prince Edward's Islands—Description of their Appearance—Visit Kerguelen's Land—Arrive at Christmas Harbour—Take in Water there—Discover an Inscription—Description of Christmas Harbour.*

CAPTAIN Cook fearing a second disaster, got his sheep and other cattle on board as soon as possible. He also increased his stock by purchasing two bulls, two heifers, two stone-horses, two mares, two rams, some ewes and goats, some poultry, and some rabbits.

Both ships being supplied with provisions and water sufficient for two years and upwards, and every other necessary article, and Captain Cook having given Captain Clerke a copy of his instructions, we repaired on board in the morning of the 30th. A breeze sprung up at south-east, at five in the afternoon, with which we weighed and stood out of the Bay; at nine it fell calm, and we anchored. At three o'clock the next morning, we weighed and put to sea, with a light breeze at south, but did not get clear of land till the 3d of December in the morning.

On

On Thursday the 5th, a squall of wind carried away the mizen top-mast of the Resolution, but we had another to replace it. On the evening of the 6th, being then in the latitude of  $39^{\circ} 14'$  south, and in the longitude of  $23^{\circ} 56'$  east, we observed several spots of water of a reddish hue. Upon examining some of this water that was taken up, we perceived a number of small animals, which the microscope discovered to resemble crayfish.

We continued to the south-east, followed by a mountainous sea, which occasioned the ship to roll exceedingly, and rendered our cattle troublesome. Several goats, especially the males, died, and some sheep. We now began to feel the cold in a very sensible degree.

On Thursday the 12th, at noon, we discovered land extending from south-east by south, to south-east by east. We, at length, discovered it to be two islands. That which lies most to the south, appeared to be about fifteen leagues in circuit; and the most northerly one, about nine leagues in circuit.

We passed at equal distance from both islands, and could not discover either tree or shrub on either of them. They seemed to have a rocky shore, and, excepting the south-east parts, a ridge of barren mountains, whose sides and summits were covered with snow.

These.

These two islands, and four others more to the east, were discovered by Captains Marion du Fresne and Crozet, French navigators, in January 1772, on their passage from the Cape of Good Hope to the Philippine Islands. As they have no names in the French chart of the southern hemisphere, Captain Cook named the two we now saw Prince Edward's Islands, and the other four by the name of Marion's and Crozet's Islands.

We had now, in general, strong gales, and very indifferent weather. After leaving Prince Edward's Islands, we shaped our course to pass to the southward of the four others, to get into the latitude of the land discovered by Monsieur de Kerguelen.

Captain Cook had received instructions to examine this island, and endeavour to discover a good harbour. On the 16th we saw numbers of penguins and divers, and rock-weed floating in the sea; and on the 21st we saw a very large seal. The weather was now very foggy, and as we hourly expected to fall in with the land, our navigation was both dangerous and tedious.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, the fog clearing away a little, we saw land, bearing south south-east, which we afterwards found to be an island of considerable height, and about three leagues in circuit. We soon after discovered another of equal magnitude, about one league to the eastward;

eastward; and, between these two, some smaller ones. In the direction of south by east, another high island was seen. We did but just weather the island last mentioned: it was a high round rock, named Bligh's Cap. Captain Cook supposed this to be the same that Monsieur de Kerguelen called the Isle of Rendezvous; but he knew nothing that could rendezvous at it but the fowls of the air, for it was certainly inaccessible to every other animal.

The weather beginning to clear up about eleven, we tacked, and steered in for the land. At noon we were enabled to determine the latitude of Bligh's Cap to be  $48^{\circ} 29'$  south, and its longitude  $68^{\circ} 40'$ . We passed it at three o'clock, with a fresh gale at west.

Presently after we clearly saw the land, and at four o'clock it extended from south-east to south-west by south, distant about four miles. The left extreme, which Captain Cook judged to be the northern point of this land, called in the French chart of the southern hemisphere Cape François, terminated in a high perpendicular rock; and the right one in a high indented point.

Towards the middle of the land there appeared to be an inlet; but, on our approaching it, we saw it was only a bending on the coast: we, therefore, bore up to go round Cape François.

Having got off the Cape, we observed the coast, to the southward, much indented by points and bays, and, therefore, fully expected to find a good harbour. We soon discovered one, into which we began to ply; but it presently fell calm, and we anchored in forty-five fathom water: the Discovery also anchored there soon after. Mr. Bligh, the master, was ordered to sound the harbour; who reported it to be safe and commodious.

Early in the morning of the 25th we weighed, and having wrought into the harbour, we anchored in eight fathoms water. The Discovery got in at two o'clock in the afternoon; when Captain Clerke informed us, that he had with difficulty escaped being driven on the south point of the harbour, his anchor having started before he could shorten in the cable. They were, therefore, obliged to set sail, and drag the anchor after them, till they had room to heave it up, when they perceived that one of its palms was broken off.

Immediately after we had anchored, Captain Cook ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, and the empty water-casks to be got ready. In the mean time he landed, to search for a convenient spot where they might be filled, and to observe what the place afforded.

He found vast quantities of penguins, and other birds, and seals, on the shore. The latter were

not

not numerous, but so insensible of fear, that we killed as many as we chose, and made use of their fat and blubber to make oil for our lamps, and other purposes. Fresh water was exceedingly plentiful; but not a single tree or shrub was to be discovered, and but little herbage of any kind; though we had flattered ourselves with the hope of meeting with something considerable growing here, having observed the sides of some of the hills to be of a lively green.

Before Captain Cook returned to his ship, he ascended a ridge of rocks, rising one above another, expecting, by that means, to obtain a view of the country; but before he had reached the top, so thick a fog came on, that it was with difficulty he could find his way down again. Towards the evening we hauled the seine at the head of the harbour, but caught no more than half a dozen small fish; nor had we any better success the next day, when we tried with hook and line. Our only resource, therefore, for fresh provisions, was birds, which were innumerable.

Though it was both foggy and rainy, on Thursday the 26th, we began to fill water, and to cut grass for our cattle, which we found near the head of the harbour. The rivulets were swelled to such a degree, by the rain that fell, that the sides of the hills, bounding the harbour, appeared to be covered with a sheet of water.

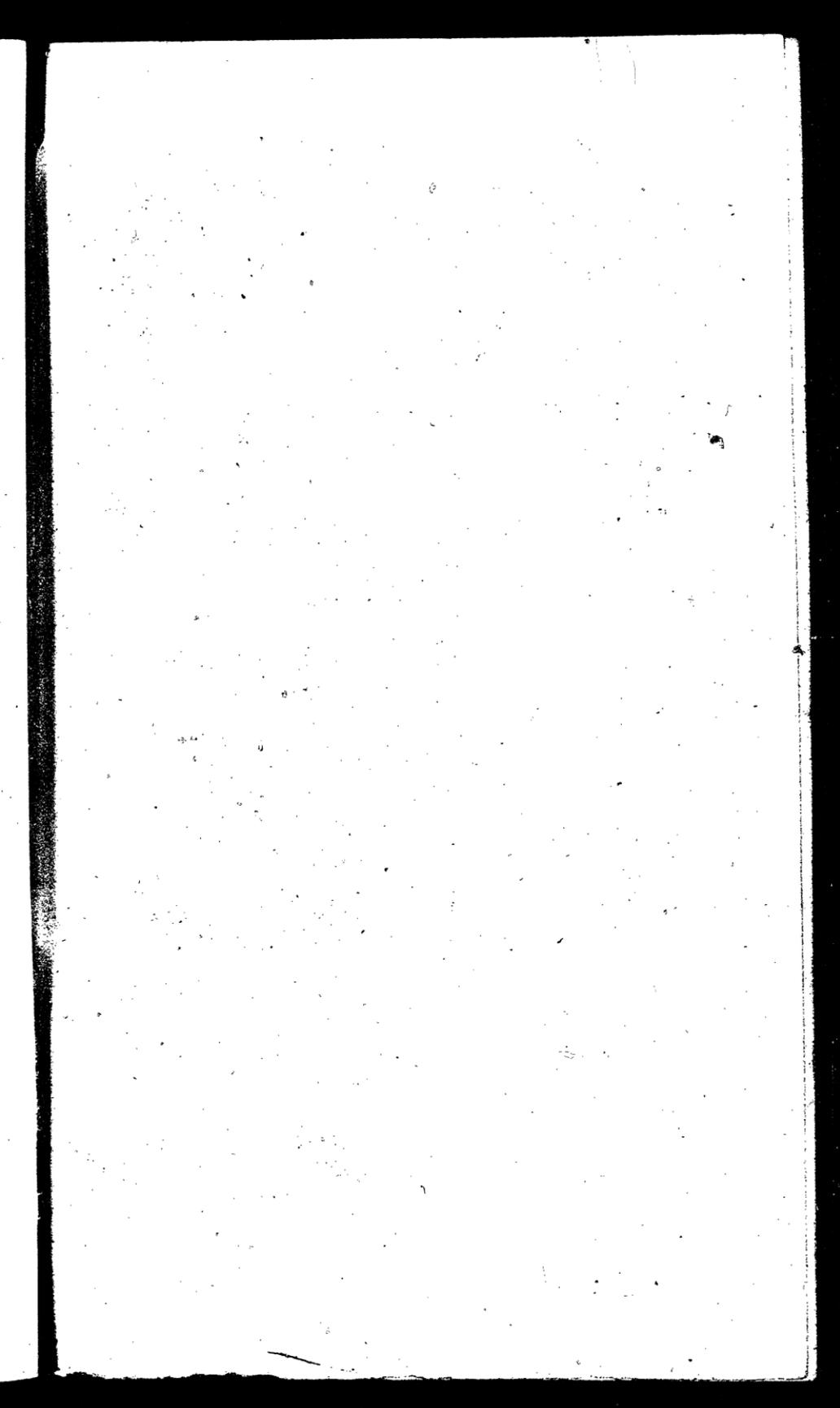
The

The people having laboured hard for two successive days, and nearly completed our water, Captain Cook allowed them the 27th of December as a day of rest, to celebrate Christmas. In consequence of which, many of them went on shore, and made excursions into the country, which they found desolate and barren in the extreme. In the evening one of them presented a quart bottle to Captain Cook, which he had found on the north-side of the harbour, fastened with some wire to a projecting rock. This bottle contained a piece of parchment, with the following inscription :

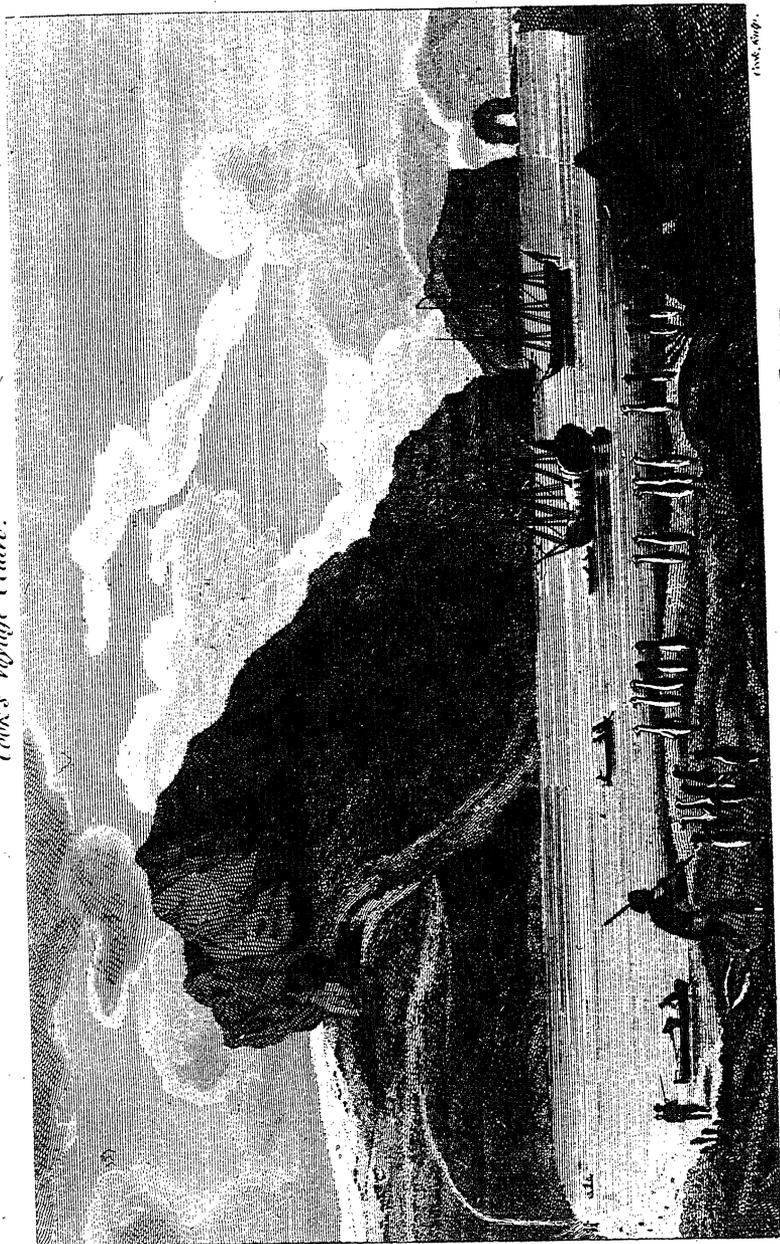
*Ludovico XV. Galliarum  
rege, et d\* de Boynes  
regi a Secretis ad res  
maritimas annis 1772 et  
1773.*

It is evident, from this inscription, that we were not the first Europeans who had visited this harbour. Captain Cook supposes it to have been left by Monsieur de Boisguchenneu, who went on shore the 13th of February 1772, the day that Monsieur de Kerguelen discovered this land; but the Captain appears to be for once mistaken; for how could Monsieur de Boisguchenneu, in the beginning of 1772, leave an inscription which

\* The *d* is probably a contraction of the word *Domino*.



*Cook's Voyage Cetano.*



*A View of CHRISTMAS HARBOUR, in ANTARCTICA, &c. &c. &c.*

1841

1841

commemorates a transaction of the following year?

Captain Cook, as a memorial of our having been in this harbour, wrote on the other side of the parchment as follows :

*Naves Resolution  
et Discovery  
de Rege Magnæ Britannæ,  
Decembris 1776.*

He then put it again into the bottle, accompanied with a silver two-penny piece of 1772, covered the mouth of the bottle with a leaden cap, and placed it the next morning in a pile of stones, erected for that purpose on an eminence, near the place where it was first found. Here Captain Cook displayed the British flag, and named the place *Christmas Harbour*, it being on that festival we arrived in it.

It is the first inlet that we meet with on the south-east side of Cape François, which forms the north side of the harbour, and is the northern point of this land. The situation sufficiently distinguishes it from any of the other inlets; and, to make it still more remarkable, its south point terminates in a high rock, perforated quite through, forming an appearance like the arch of a bridge. The head of the harbour lies open to only two points of the compass, and these are covered by islands in the offing, so that a sea cannot fall in

to hurt a ship. It is high water here about ten o'clock at the full and change days, and the tide rises about four feet.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, his Second Lieutenant, went upon Cape François; expecting from this elevation to have had a view of the sea-coast, and the islands lying off it. But they found every distant object below them, hid in a thick fog. The land even with them, or of a greater height, was visible enough, and appeared exceedingly naked and desolate; except some hills to the southward, which were covered with snow. When they returned to the ship, they found her unmoored, and ready to put to sea; but we did not weigh anchor till five o'clock the next morning.

## C H A P. V.

*Depart from Christmas Harbour—Range along the Coast—Cape Cumberland, Cumberland Bay, Point Pringle, Howe's Foreland, &c. described—Remarkable Beds of Rock-weed—Danger from Shoals—Arrival at Port Palliser—Cape George described—Mr. Anderson's Natural History of the Animals, Plants, Soil, &c. of Kerguelen's Land.*

ON the 29th of December we sailed out of Christmas Harbour, steering south-east along the coast, with a fine breeze and clear weather. This was unexpected, as, for some time past, fogs had prevailed more or less every day. Though we kept the lead constantly going, we seldom struck ground with a line of sixty fathoms.

We were off a promontory, which Captain Cook called Cape Cumberland, about seven or eight o'clock. It lies about a league and an half from the south point of Christmas Harbour; between them is a good bay. Off Cape Cumberland is a small island on the summit of which is a rock, resembling a sentry-box, which name was given to the island on that account. A group of small islands and rocks lies two miles farther to the eastward: we sailed between these and Sentry-box Island, the breadth of the channel being full

D 2

a mile.

a mile. We found no bottom with forty fathoms of line.

After passing through this channel, we saw a bay on the south-side of Cape Cumberland, running in three leagues to the westward. It is formed by Cape Cumberland to the north, and by a promontory to the south. Captain Cook named this promontory Point Pringle, as a compliment to Sir John Pringle, President of the Royal Society. The bottom of this bay was called Cumberland Bay.

The coast is formed into a fifth bay, to the southward of Point Pringle. In this bay, which obtained the name of White Bay, are several lesser bays or coves, which appeared to be sheltered from all winds. Off the south-point, several rocks raise their heads above water, and probably there are many others that do not.

The land which first opened off Cape François, in the direction of south  $53^{\circ}$  east, we had kept on our larboard-bow, thinking it was an island, and that we should discover a passage between that and the main; but we found it to be a peninsula, joined to the rest of the coast by a low isthmus. The bay, formed by this peninsula, Captain Cook named Repulse Bay. The northern point of the peninsula was named Howe's Foreland, in honour of Lord Howe.

Drawing near it, we observed some rocks and breakers not far from the north-west part, and two islands

islands to the eastward of it, which, at first, appeared as one. We steered between them and the foreland, and were in the middle of the channel by twelve o'clock. - The land of this foreland or peninsula, is of a tolerable height, and of a hilly and rocky substance. The coast is low, and almost covered with sea-birds. We also saw some seals upon the beaches.

Having cleared the rocks and islands before-mentioned, we perceived the whole sea before us to be chequered with large beds of rock-weed, which was fast to the bottom. There is often found a great depth of water upon such shoals, and rocks have, as often, raised their heads almost to the surface of the water. It is always dangerous to sail over them, especially when there is no surge of the sea to discover the danger. We endeavoured to avoid the rocks, by steering through the winding channels by which they were separated. Though the lead was continually going, we never struck ground with a line of sixty fathoms: this increased the danger, as we could not anchor, however urgent the necessity might be. At length we discovered a lurking rock, in the middle of one of these beds of weeds, and even with the surface of the sea. This was sufficiently alarming, to make us take every precaution to avoid danger.

We were now about eight miles to the southward of Howe's Foreland, across the mouth of a

large bay. In this bay are several rocks, low islands, and beds of sea-weed; but there appeared to be winding channels between them. We were so much embarrassed with these shoals, that we hauled off to the eastward, in hopes of extricating ourselves from our difficulties; but this plunged us into greater, and we found it absolutely necessary to secure the ships, if possible, before night, especially as the weather was hazy, and a fog was apprehended.

Seeing some inlets to the south-west, Captain Cook ordered Captain Clerke (the Discovery drawing less water than the Resolution) to lead in for the shore, which was immediately attempted: after running over the edges of several shoals, on which was found from ten to twenty fathoms water, Captain Clerke made the signal for having discovered an harbour, in which we anchored in fifteen fathoms water, about five o'clock in the evening.

No sooner were the ships secured, than it began to blow so very strong, that we deemed it necessary to strike top-gallant yards. The weather, however, continued fair, and it presently became clear, the wind having dispersed the fog that had settled on the hills. As soon, therefore, as we had anchored, Captain Cook ordered two boats to be hoisted out; in one of which he dispatched Mr. Bligh, the Master, to survey the upper part of the harbour, and look out for wood.

He

He also desired Captain Clerke to send his Master to sound the channel, south of the small isles, and went himself, in his other boat, accompanied by Mr. Gore and Mr. Bailey, and landed on the north point, to see what discovery could be made from thence.

From an hill over the point, they had a view of the sea-coast, as far as Howe's Foreland. Several small islands, rocks, and breakers, were scattered along the coast, and there appeared no better channel to get out of the harbour, than that by which they had entered it.

While Captain Cook and Mr. Bailey were making these observations, Mr. Gore encompassed the hill, and joined them at the place where the boat was attending for them. There was nothing to obstruct their walk, except some craggy precipices; the country being, if possible, more barren and desolate than that about Christmas Harbour. There was neither food nor covering for cattle of any sort, and, if any had been left, they must inevitably have perished. In the little cove, where their boat was waiting for them (which Captain Cook called Penguin Cove, from the immense numbers of those birds appearing there) is a fine river of fresh water, which we could approach without difficulty. Some large seals, shags, and a few ducks were seen here; and Mr. Bailey had a glance of a very small land-bird, but it flew among the rocks, and they lost it.

At nine o'clock they got on board, and Mr. Bligh returned soon after. He reported that he had been four miles up the harbour; that its direction was west south-west; that its breadth near the ships did not exceed a mile; that the soundings were from thirty-seven to ten fathoms; and that, having landed on both shores, he found the land barren and rocky, without a tree or shrub, or hardly any appearance of verdure.

The next morning we weighed anchor, and put out to sea. This harbour was named Port Palliser, in honour of Admiral Sir Hugh Palliser. In getting out to sea, we, in general, steered through the winding channels among the shoals, though we sometimes ventured to run over some of them, on which we never found less than eighteen fathoms water; they would not, therefore, have been discovered, had it not been for the seaweed growing upon them.

Having got three or four leagues from the coast, we found a clear sea, and, about nine o'clock, discovered a round hill, like a sugar-loaf, bearing south-east, and a small island to the northward of it, distant about four leagues. Captain Cook named the sugar-loaf hill Mount Campbell; at noon it bore south  $47^{\circ}$  west; a low point bore south-east, at the distance of about twenty miles; and we were little more than two leagues from the shore.

The land here, in general, is low and level. The mountains end about five leagues from the low point, leaving a great extent of low land, on which Mount Campbell is situated. These mountains seemed to be composed of naked rocks, whose summits were covered with snow; and nothing but sterility was to be seen in the vallies.

At noon we perceived low land, opening off the low point just mentioned, in the direction of south south-east. It proved to be the eastern extremity of this land, and was named Cape Digby. Between Howe's Foreland and Cape Digby, the shore forms one great bay, extending several leagues to the south-west. A vast quantity of sea-weed grows over it, which seemed to be such as Mr. Banks distinguished by the name of *fucus giganteus*. Though the stem of this weed is not much thicker than a man's thumb, some of it grows to the amazing length of sixty fathoms.

At one o'clock, seeing a small bending in the coast, on the north side of Cape Digby, we steered for it, with an intention to anchor there; but, being disappointed in our views, we pushed forward, in order to see as much as possible of the coast before night. From Cape Digby, it trends nearly south-west by south to a low point, to which Captain Cook gave the name of Point Charlotte, in honour of our amiable Queen.

In

In the direction of south south-west, about six leagues from Cape Digby, is a pretty high projecting point, called the Prince of Wales's Foreland; and six leagues beyond that, in the same direction, is the most southerly point of the whole coast, which, in honour of his Majesty, was distinguished by the name of Cape George.

Between Point Charlotte, and the Prince of Wales's Foreland, we discovered a deep inlet, which was called Royal Sound; and, advancing to the south, we saw another inlet into the Royal Sound, on the south-west side of the Prince of Wales's Foreland.

On the south-west side of the Royal Sound, all the land to Cape George consists of elevated hills, gradually rising from the sea to a considerable height; they were naked and barren, and their summits cap't with snow. Not a vestige of a tree or shrub was to be seen. Some of the low land about Cape Digby seemed to be covered with a green turf, but a considerable part of it appeared quite naked. Penguins, and other oceanic birds, were numerous on the beaches, and shags innumerable kept flying about our ships.

Desirous of getting the length of Cape George, Captain Cook continued to stretch to the south, till between seven and eight o'clock; when, seeing no probability of accomplishing his design, he took the advantage of the wind, which had shifted to west south-west, (the direction in

which we wanted to go) and stood away from the coast.

Cape George now bore south  $53^{\circ}$  west, distant about seven leagues. We saw no land to the south of it, except a small island that lies off the pitch of the Cape; and a south-west swell, which we met when we brought the Cape to bear in this direction, almost convinced us that there was no more in that quarter.

The French discoverers imagined Cape Francois to be the projecting point of a southern continent. The English have discovered that no such continent exists, and that the land in question is an island of small extent; which, from its sterility, might properly be called the Island of Desolation; but Captain Cook was unwilling to rob Monsieur de Kerguelen of the honour of its bearing his name.

Mr. Anderson, who, during the short time we lay in Christmas Harbour, lost no opportunity of searching the country in every direction, relates the following particulars.

No place, (says he) hitherto discovered in either hemisphere, affords so scanty a field for the naturalist as this sterile spot. Some verdure, indeed, appeared, when at a small distance from the shore, which might raise the expectation of meeting with a little herbage; but all this lively appearance was occasioned by one small plant, resembling saxifrage, which grew up the hills in large spreading

ing tufts, on a kind of rotten turf, which, if dried, might serve for fuel, and was the only thing seen here that could possibly be applied to that purpose.

Another plant, which grew to near the height of two feet, was pretty plentifully scattered about the boggy declivities: it had the appearance of a small cabbage when it was shot into seeds. It had the watery acrid taste of the antiscorbutic plants, though it materially differed from the whole tribe. When eaten raw, it was not unlike the New-Zealand scurvy-grass; but when boiled, it acquired a rank flavour. At this time, none of its seeds were ripe enough to be brought home, and introduced into our English kitchen-gardens.

Near the brooks and boggy places were found two other small plants, which were eaten as salad; the one like garden cresses, and very hot; and the other very mild: the latter is a curiosity, having not only male and female, but also androgynous plants.

Some coarse grass grew pretty plentifully in a few small spots near the harbour, which was cut down for our cattle. In short, the whole catalogue of plants did not exceed eighteen; including a beautiful species of lichen, and several sorts of moss. Nor was there the appearance of a tree or shrub in the whole country.

Among the animals, the most considerable were seals, which were distinguished by the name of  
sea-

sea-bears; being the sort that are called the ursine seal. They come on shore to repose and breed. At that time they were shedding their hair, and so remarkably tame, that there was no difficulty in killing them.

No other quadruped was seen; but a great number of oceanic birds, as ducks, shags, petrels, &c. The ducks were somewhat like a widgeon, both in size and figure; a considerable number of them were killed and eaten: they were excellent food, and had not the least fishy taste.

The Cape petrel, the small blue one, and the small black one, or Mother Carey's chicken, were not in plenty here; but another sort, which is the largest of the petrels, and called by the seamen Mother Carey's goose, is found in abundance. This petrel is as large as an albatross, and is carnivorous, feeding on the dead carcases of seals, birds, &c.

The greatest number of birds here were penguins, which consist of three sorts. The head of the largest is black, the upper part of the body of a leaden-grey, the under part white, and the feet black; two broad stripes of fine yellow descend from the head to the breast; the bill is of a reddish colour, and longer than in the other sorts. The second sort is about half the size of the former. It is of a blackish grey on the upper part of the body, and has a white spot on the upper  
part

part of the head. The bill and feet are yellowish. In the third sort, the upper part of the body and throat are black, the rest white, except the top of the head, which is ornamented with a fine yellow arch, which it can erect as two crests.

The flogs here were of two sorts, viz. the lesser corvorant, or water-crow, and another with a blackish back and a white belly. The sea-swallow, the tern, the common sea-gull, and the Port Egmont hen, were also found here.

Large flocks of a singular kind of white bird flew about here, having the base of the bill covered with a horny crust. It had a black bill and white feet, was somewhat larger than a pigeon, and the flesh tasted like that of a duck.

The seine was once hauled, when we found a few fish about the size of a small haddock. The only shell-fish we saw here, were a few limpets and muscles.

Many of the hills, notwithstanding they were of a moderate height, were at that time covered with snow, though answering to our June. It is reasonable to imagine that rain must be very frequent here, as well from the marks of large torrents having rushed down, as from the appearance of the country, which, even on the hills, was a continued bog or swamp.

The rocks consist principally of a dark blue and very hard stone, intermixed with particles of glimmer

glimmer or quartz. Some considerable rocks were also formed here from a brownish brittle stone.

---

## C H A P. VI.

*Passage of the Ships from Kerguelen's to Van Diemen's Land—The Resolution damaged by a Squall—Arrival in Adventure Bay—Various Interviews with the Inhabitants—Description of their Persons, Dress, Manners, and Customs—Mr. Anderson's Remarks on the Character and Language of the Natives, and on the various Productions of the Country.*

CAPTAIN Cook intending, pursuant to the instructions he had received, to proceed next to New-Zealand, to take in wood and water, and provide hay for the cattle, steered east by north from Kerguelen's Land. The 31st of December, our longitude, by observation of the sun and moon, was  $72^{\circ} 33' 36''$  east; and on the first day of the year 1777, we were in the latitude of  $48^{\circ} 41'$  south, longitude  $76^{\circ} 50'$  east. Till the 3d of January the weather was tolerably clear, with fresh gales from the west and south-west; but now the wind veered to the north, and continued

tinued in that quarter eight days; during which, though there was at the same time a thick fog, we ran upwards of three hundred leagues, chiefly in the dark; the sun, indeed, sometimes made its appearance, but very rarely. On the 7th, Captain Cook dispatched a boat with orders to Captain Clerke, fixing their rendezvous at Adventure Bay, in Van Diemen's Land, if the ships should happen to separate before they arrived there. However, we had the good fortune not to lose company with each other. On Sunday the 12th, the northerly winds were succeeded by a calm, which was soon followed by a southerly wind. Our latitude was now  $48^{\circ} 40'$  south, longitude  $110^{\circ} 26'$  east. The wind blew from the south a whole day, and then veering to the west and north-west, brought on some fair weather.

On the 19th, a sudden squall carried away the Resolution's fore-top-mast, and main-top-gallant-mast, which occasioned some delay in fitting another top-mast. The former was repaired without the loss of any part of it. The wind still remaining at the west point, we had clear weather; and on the 24th, in the morning, we discovered the coast of Van Diemen's Land, bearing north  $\frac{1}{2}$  west. Several islands and elevated rocks lie dispersed along the coast, the most southerly of which is the Mewstone. Our latitude, at noon, was  $43^{\circ} 47'$  south, longitude  $147^{\circ}$  east, the south-east or south cape being near three leagues distant. Captain  
Cook

Cook gave the name of the Eddystone to a rock that lies about a league to the eastward of Swilly Isle or Rock, on account of its striking resemblance to Eddystone light-house. These two rocks may, even in the night, be seen at a considerable distance, and are the summits of a ledge of rocks under water. On the north-east side of Storm Bay, are some creeks that seem tolerably sheltered; and if this coast was carefully examined, several good harbours would most probably be found.

The 26th, at noon, a breeze sprung up at south-east, which gave Captain Cook an opportunity of executing his design of carrying the ships into Adventure Bay, where we anchored at four o'clock in the afternoon in twelve fathoms water, about three quarters of a mile from the shore. The Captains Cook and Clerke then went, in separate boats, in search of convenient spots for wooding, watering, and making hay. They found plenty of wood and water, but very little grass. The next morning Captain Cook detached two parties, under the conduct of Lieutenant King, to the east side of the bay, to cut wood and grass, some marines attending them as a guard, though none of the natives had yet appeared. He also sent the launch to provide water for the ships; and afterwards paid a visit to the parties thus employed.

In the evening we drew the seine, and caught a great quantity of fish, with which this bay abounds; and we should have procured more, if the net had not broken. Every one now came on board with the supplies they had obtained; but next morning, the wind not being fair for sailing, they were again sent on shore on the same duty; and Mr. Roberts, one of the Mates, was dispatched in a boat to examine the bay. We had observed columns of smoke in different parts, from the time of our approaching the coast; but we saw none of the natives till the afternoon of the 28th, when eight men and a boy surprised us with a visit at our wooding-place. They approached us with the greatest confidence, none of them having any weapons except one, who had a short stick pointed at one end. They were of a middling stature, and somewhat slender; their hair was black and woolly, and their skin was also black. They were entirely naked, with large punctures or ridges, some in curved, and others in straight lines, on different parts of their bodies. Their lips were not remarkably thick, nor their noses very flat: their features, on the contrary, were not unpleasing, their eyes pretty good, and their teeth tolerably even and regular, though exceedingly dirty. The faces of some of them were painted with a red ointment, and most of them smeared their hair and beards with the same composition. When we offered them presents, they

they received them without any apparent satisfaction. They either returned, or threw away some bread that was given them, without even tasting it: they likewise refused some elephant fish; but when we gave them some birds; they kept them. Two pigs having been brought on shore to be left in the woods, they seized them by the ears, and seemed inclined to carry them off, with an intention, as we supposed, of killing them.

Captain Cook wishing to know the use of the stick which one of the savages held in his hand, made signs to them to shew him; upon which one of them took aim at a piece of wood placed as a mark, about the distance of twenty yards; but, after several essays, he was still wide of the mark. Omai, to shew the great superiority of our weapons, immediately fired his musquet at it, which unexpected noise so alarmed them, that they ran into the woods with uncommon speed; and one of them was so terrified, that he let fall two knives and an axe which he had received from us. They then went to the place where the crew of the Discovery were watering; but the officer of that party firing a musquet in the air, they fled with great precipitation.

Immediately after they had retired, Captain Cook ordered the two pigs, one a male and the other a female, to be carried about a mile within the woods, and he himself saw them left there,

taking care that none of the natives should observe what was passing. He also intended to have left a young bull and a cow, besides some goats and sheep; but he soon relinquished that design, being of opinion that the natives would destroy them; which he supposed would be the fate of the pigs, if they should chance to find them out. But as swine soon become wild, and are fond of being in the woods, it is probable that they were preserved. The other cattle could not have remained long concealed from the savages, as they must have been put into an open place.

We were prevented from sailing on the 29th by a dead calm, which continued the whole day. Captain Cook, therefore, sent parties on shore to cut wood and grass, as usual; and he accompanied the wooding party himself. Soon after our landing, about twenty of them joined us, one of whom was distinguished not only by his deformity, but by the drollery of his gesticulations, and the seeming humour of his speeches, which, however, we could not understand. Those whom we now saw differed in some respects, particularly in the texture of the hair, from the natives of the more northerly parts of this country, whom Captain Cook met with in his first voyage. Some of our present company had a slip of the kangaroo skin round their ancles; and others wore round their necks some small cord, made of fur. They seemed not to value iron, but were apparently pleased with

with the medals and beads that were given them. They did not even appear to know the use of fish-hooks, though it is more than probable, that they were acquainted with some method of catching fish.

Their habitations were small hovels or sheds built of sticks, and covered with the bark of trees. We had also good reason to suppose, that they sometimes took up their residence in the trunks of large trees, hollowed out by fire.

Captain Cook, on leaving the wooding party, went to the grass-cutters, and having seen the boats loaded with hay, returned on board. He had just quitted the shore, when several women and children appeared, and were introduced to Lieutenant King by the men who accompanied them. These females wore a kangaroo skin fastened over their shoulders, the only use of which seemed to be, to support their children on their backs, for it left those parts uncovered which modesty directs us to conceal. Their bodies were black, and marked with scars like those of the men; from whom, however, they differed, in having their heads shaved; some of them being completely shorn, others only on one side, while the rest of them had the upper part of their heads shaved, leaving a very narrow circle of hair all round. They were far from being handsome; however, some of our gentlemen paid their ad-  
E 3 dresses

dresses to them, and made liberal offers, but without effect.

In the afternoon Captain Cook went again on shore, and found the grass-cutters on Penguin Island, where they had met with excellent grass in the greatest abundance. The different parties laboured hard till the evening, and then, having provided a sufficient quantity of what was most wanted, returned on board.

During our continuance in Van Diemen's Land, we had either light airs from the east, or calms: we therefore lost little or no time by touching on this coast. This land was discovered in November 1642, by Tasman, who gave it the name of Van Diemen's Land. Captain Furneaux touched at it in March 1773. It is the southern point of New Holland, which is by far the largest island in the known world, and almost deserves the name of a continent. The land is diversified with hills and vallies, and well wooded. The only wind to which Adventure Bay is exposed, is the north-east; and, upon the whole, this may be considered as a very safe road. Its latitude is  $43^{\circ} 21' 20''$  south, and its longitude  $147^{\circ} 29'$  east.

Mr. Anderson, surgeon of the Resolution, employed himself in examining the country during our continuance in Adventure Bay. His remarks on the inhabitants and their language, and his account of the natural productions of the country, are to the following purport. There is a beau-

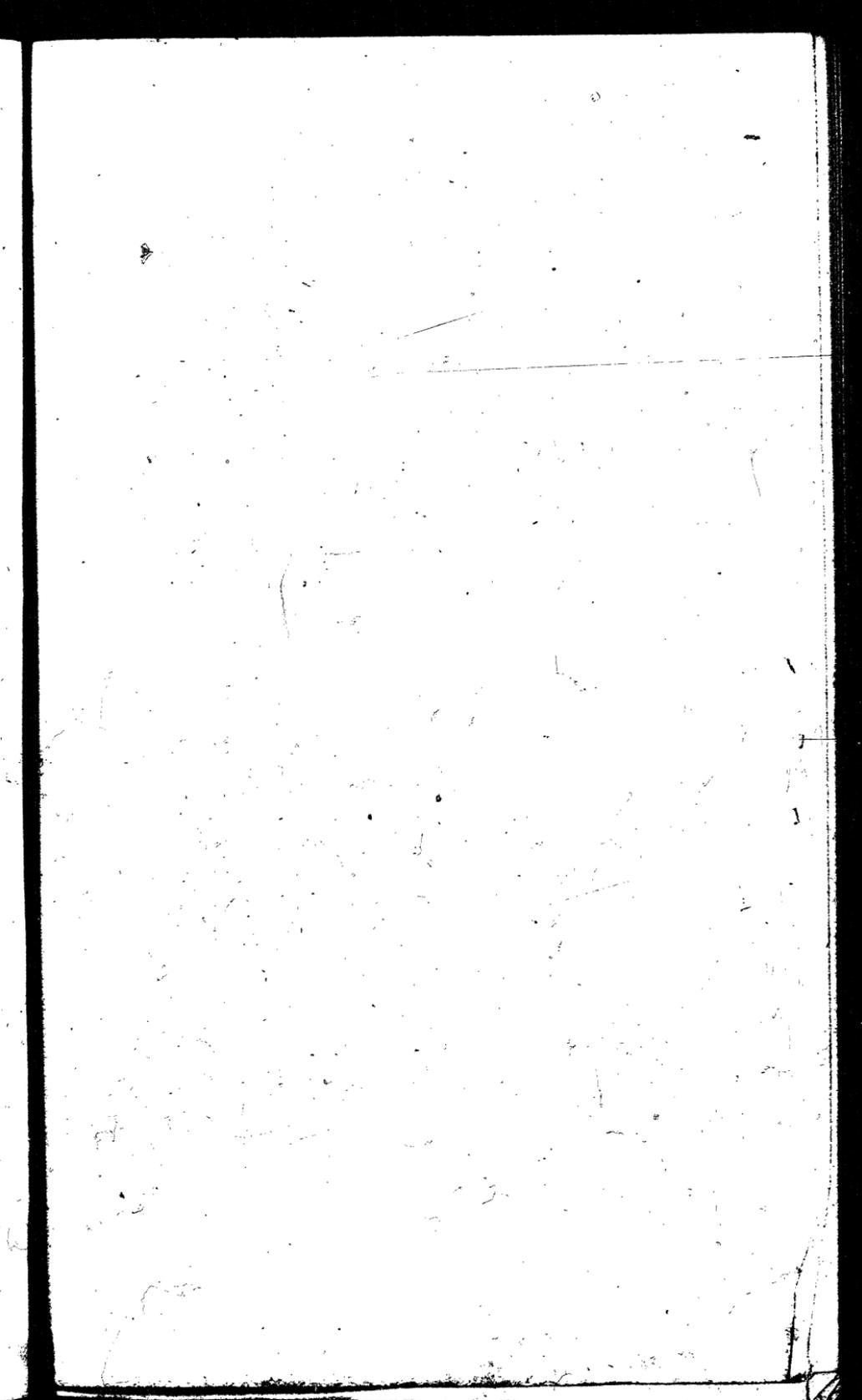
beautiful sandy beach, about two miles long, at the bottom of Adventure Bay, formed to all appearance by the particles which the sea washes from a fine white sand-stone. This beach is very well adapted for hauling a seine. Behind it is a plain, with a brackish lake, out of which we caught, by angling, some bream and trout. The parts adjoining the bay are mostly hilly, and are an entire forest of tall trees, rendered almost impassable by brakes of fern, shrubs, &c. The soil on the flat land, and on the lower part of the hills, is sandy, or consists of a yellowish earth, and in some parts of a reddish clay; but further up the hills, it is of a grey tough cast. This country, upon the whole, bears many marks of being very dry, and the heat appears to be great. No mineral bodies, nor stones of any other kind than the white sand-stone, were observed by us; nor could we find any vegetables that afforded subsistence for man. The forest-trees are all of one kind, and generally quite straight: they bear clusters of small white flowers. The principal plants we observed were wood-forrel, milk-wort, cudweed, bell-flower, gladiolus, samphire, and several kinds of fern. The only quadruped we saw distinctly was a species of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat. The kangaroo, found further northward in New Holland, may also be supposed to inhabit here, as some of the inhabitants had pieces of the skin of that animal.

The principal sorts of birds in the woods are brown hawks or eagles, crows, large pigeons, yellowish paroquets, and a species which we called *motacilla cyanea*, from the beautiful azure colour of its head and neck. On the shore were several gulls, black oyster-catchers, or sea-pies, and plovers of a stone-colour.

We observed in the woods some blackish snakes that were pretty large, and we killed a lizard which was fifteen inches long and six round, beautifully clouded with yellow and black.

Among a variety of fish we caught some large rays, nurses, leather-jackets, bream, soles, flounders, gurnards, and elephant-fish; besides a sort which we did not recollect to have seen before, and which partakes of the nature both of a round and a flat fish. Upon the rocks are muscles and other shell-fish; and upon the beach we found some pretty Medusa's heads. The most troublesome insects we met with were the musquitoes, and a large black ant, whose bite inflicts extreme pain.

The inhabitants seemed mild and cheerful, with little of that wild appearance that savages in general have. They are almost totally devoid of personal activity or genius, and are nearly upon a par with the wretched natives of Terra del Fuego. They display, however, some contrivance in their method of cutting their arms and bodies in lines of different directions, raised above





the surface of the skin. Their indifference for our presents, their general inattention, and want of curiosity, were very remarkable, and testified no acuteness of understanding. Their complexion is a dull black, which they sometimes heighten by smutting their bodies, as we supposed, from their leaving a mark behind on any clean substance. Their hair is perfectly woolly, and is clotted with grease and red ochre, like that of the Hottentots. Their noses are broad and full, and the lower part of the face projects considerably. Their eyes are of a moderate size, and though they are not very quick or piercing, they give the countenance a frank, chearful, and pleasing cast. Their teeth are not very white, nor well set, and their mouths are too wide: they wear their beards long, and clotted with paint. They are, upon the whole, well proportioned, though their belly is rather protuberant. Their favourite attitude is to stand with one side forward, and one hand grasping, across the back, the opposite arm, which, on this occasion, hangs, down by the side that projects.

Near the shore in the bay, we observed some wretched constructions of sticks covered with bark; but these seemed to have been only temporary, and they had converted many of their largest trees into more comfortable and commodious habitations. The trunks of these were hollowed out to the height of six or seven feet, by  
means

means of fire. That they sometimes dwell in them, was manifest, from their hearths in the middle made of clay, round which four or five persons might sit. These places of shelter are rendered durable, by their leaving one side of the tree sound, so that it continues growing with great luxuriance.

That the natives of Van Diemen's Land originate from the same stock with those who inhabit the northern parts of New Holland, seems evident. Though they differ in many respects, their dissimilarity may be reasonably accounted for, from the united considerations of distance of place, length of time, total separation, and diversity of climate.

As the inhabitants of New Holland seem all to have sprung from one common source, there is nothing very peculiar in them; for they greatly resemble the savages of the islands of Tanna and Manicola. There is even some reason for supposing, that they may originally have come from the same place with all the natives of the Pacific Ocean: for, of about ten words which we found means to get from them, that which is used to express *cold*, is very similar to that of New-Zealand and Otaheite; the first being *mallareede*, the second *makka'reede*, and the third *ma'reede*. The remainder of our scanty vocabulary of Van Diemen's Land is as follows, viz.

Quadne,	<i>a woman.</i>
Eve'rai,	<i>the eye.</i>
Muidje,	<i>the nose,</i>
Ka'my,	<i>the teeth, mouth, or tongue.</i>
Lae'renne,	<i>a small bird, living in the woods here.</i>
Koy'gee,	<i>the ear.</i>
Teegera,	<i>to eat.</i>
No'onga,	<i>elevated scars on the body.</i>
Toga'rago,	<i>I will go, or I must be gone.</i>

It will probably be found, upon a diligent enquiry, and an accurate comparison drawn from the affinity of languages, that all the people from New Holland, eastward to Easter Island, are of the same extraction.

## C H A P. VII.

*Course to New-Zealand—Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound—Intercourse with the New-Zealanders—Their Dexterity in building Huts—Information with regard to the Massacre of Captain Furneaux's People—Two violent Storms—Account of Kaboora, who headed the Party that killed our People—Of the two Youths who accompany us on board—Captain Cook's Observations on the Inhabitants of New-Zealand.*

ON the 30th of January, in the morning, we weighed anchor with a light westerly breeze, from Adventure Bay. Soon after we had put to sea, the wind became southerly, and produced a perfect storm; but veering in the evening to the east and north-east, its fury began to abate. This wind was attended with an almost intolerable heat, which, however, was of so short a continuance, that some of our company did not perceive it.

In the night, between the 6th and 7th of February, one of the Discovery's marines fell overboard and was drowned. On the 10th, in the afternoon, we descried the coast of New-Zealand, at the distance of eight or nine leagues. We then steered for Cape Farewell, and afterwards for Stephens's Island; and, in the morning of the  
12th,

12th, anchored in Ship Cove, Queen Charlotte's Sound. We soon after landed many empty water-casks, and cleared a place for two observatories. In the mean time several canoes came along-side of our ships; but very few of those who were in them would venture on board. This shyness appeared the more extraordinary, as Captain Cook was well known to all of them; and as one man in particular among the present group, had been treated by him with distinguished kindness during a former voyage. This man, however, could not by any means be prevailed on to come aboard. We could only account for this reserve by supposing, that they were apprehensive of our revenging the death of Captain Fūrneaux's people who had been killed here. But, upon Captain Cook's assuring them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not molest them on that account, they soon laid aside all appearance of suspicion and distrust. The next day we pitched two tents, and erected the observatories, in which Messrs. King and Baily immediately commenced their astronomical operations. Two of our men were employed in brewing spruce beer; while others filled the water-casks, collected grass for the cattle, and cut wood. Those who remained on board were occupied in repairing the rigging, and performing the necessary duty of the ships, A guard of marines was appointed for the protection of the different parties

ties on shore, and arms were given to all the workmen, to repel all attacks from the natives, if they had been inclined to molest us; but this did not appear to be the case.

During the course of this day, many families came from various parts of the coast, and erected their huts close to our encampment. The facility with which they build these temporary habitations, is remarkable. They have been seen to erect above twenty of them on a spot of ground, which was covered with plants and shrubs not an hour before. Captain Cook was present when a number of savages landed, and built a village of this kind. They had no sooner leaped from the canoes, than they tore up the shrubs and plants from the ground they had fixed upon, or put up some part of the framing of a hut. While the men were thus employed, the women took care of the canoes, secured the provisions and utensils, and gathered dry sticks, to serve as materials for a fire. These huts are sufficiently calculated for affording shelter from the rain and wind. The same tribe or family, however large, generally associate and build together; so that their towns and villages are usually divided by palisades into separate districts.

We received considerable advantage from the natives coming to live with us; for, every day, some of them were occupied in catching fish, a good share of which we generally procured by exchanges.

exchanges. Besides fish, we had other refreshments in abundance. Scurvy-grass, celery, and portable soup, were boiled every day with the wheat and pease; and we had spruce beer for our drink. Such a regimen soon removed all seeds of the scurvy from our people, if any of them had contracted it. But indeed, on our arrival here, we had only two invalids in both ships.

We were occasionally visited by other natives, besides those who lived close to us. Their articles of traffic were fish, curiosities, and women; the two first of which were speedily disposed of, but the latter did not come to a good market, as our crew had conceived a dislike to them. Captain Cook observes upon this occasion, that he connived at a connection with women, because he could not prevent it; but that he never encouraged it, because he dreaded its consequences. Among our occasional visitors was a chief called Kahoora, who headed the party that cut off Captain Furneaux's people. He was far from being beloved by his countrymen, some of whom even importuned Captain Cook to kill him, at the same time expressing their disapprobation of him in the severest terms. A striking proof of the divisions that prevail among these people occurred to us; for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, solicited our Commodore to destroy the other.

Captain

Captain Cook, on the 15th, went in a boat to search for grafs, and visited the hippah, or fortified village, at the south-west point of the island of Motuara. He observed no inhabitants at this village, though there were evident marks of its having been lately occupied, the houses and palisades being in a state of good repair. Not the smallest vestige remained of the English garden-seeds which had been planted at this hippah in 1773, during Captain Cook's second voyage. They had probably been all rooted out to make room for buildings; for, at the other gardens then planted, we found radishes, onions, leeks, cabbages, purslain, potatoes, &c. Though the natives of New-Zealand are fond of the last-mentioned root, they had not planted a single one, much less any of the other articles we had introduced among them.

Early in the morning of the 16th, the Captains Cook and Clerke, and several of the officers and sailors, accompanied by Omai and two New-Zealanders, set out, in five boats, to collect fodder for the cattle. Having proceeded about three leagues up the Sound, they landed on the east side, where they cut a sufficient quantity of grafs to load the two launches. On their return down the Sound, they paid a visit to Grafs Cove, the place where Captain Furneaux's people had been massacred. They here met with Captain Cook's old friend Pedro, who is mentioned by him

*Cook's Voyage, Ocean Edition.*



*The Landing of HERRING in NEW ZEALAND.*



him in the history of his second voyage. He, and another New-Zealander, received them on the beach, armed with the spear and patoo, though not without manifest signs of fear. Their apprehensions, however, were quickly dissipated by a few presents, which brought down to the shore two or three others of the family.

During the continuance of our party at this place, the Commodore, being desirous of enquiring into the particular circumstances relative to the massacre of our countrymen, fixed upon Omai as an interpreter for that purpose, as his language was a dialect of that of New-Zealand. Pedro, and the other natives who were present, none of whom had been concerned in that unfortunate transaction, answered every question without reserve. Their information imported, that while our people were at dinner, some of the natives stole, or snatched from them, some fish and bread, for which offence they received some blows: a quarrel immediately ensued, and two of the savages were shot dead, by the only two musquets that were fired; for, before a third was discharged, the natives rushed furiously upon our people, and being superior in number, destroyed them all. Pedro and his companions also pointed out the very spot where the *fracas* happened, and the place where the boat lay, in which a black servant of Captain Furneaux had been left to take care of it.

According to another account, this negro was the occasion of the quarrel; for, one of the natives stealing something out of the boat, the black gave him a violent blow with a stick. His countrymen hearing his cries at some distance, imagined he was killed, and immediately attacked our people, who, before they could reach the boat, or prepare themselves against the unexpected assault, fell a sacrifice to the fury of the exasperated savages.

The former of these accounts was corroborated by the testimony of many other natives, who could have no interest in disguising the truth. The latter account rests upon the authority of the young New-Zealander, who quitted his country for the sake of going away with us, and who, therefore, could not be supposed to be inclined to deceive us. As they all agreed, that the fray happened while the boat's crew were at dinner, both the accounts may be true; for it is by no means improbable, that, while some of the islanders were stealing from the man who had been left to guard the boat, others might take equal liberties with those who were on shore.

It appears, that there was no pre-meditated plan of bloodshed, and that, if these thefts had not been rather too hastily resented, all mischief would have been avoided; for Kahoora's greatest enemies acknowledged, that he had no previous intention of quarrelling. With regard to the  
boat,

boat, some said, that it had been pulled to pieces and burnt; while others asserted, that it had been carried off by a party of strangers.

Our party continued at Grass Cove till the evening, and then embarked to return to the ships. They had scarcely left the shore, when the wind began to blow violently at north-west, so that it was not without great difficulty that they could reach the ships, where some of the boats did not arrive till the next morning; and it was very fortunate that they got on board then, for soon afterwards a perfect storm arose. Towards the evening, however, the wind veering to the east, brought on fair weather. On Tuesday the 18th, Pedro and his whole family came to reside near us. The proper name of this chief was Matahouah; but some of Captain Cook's people had given him the appellation of Pedro in a former voyage. On the 20th we had another storm, of less duration than the former, but more violent; in consequence of which, both our ships struck their yards and top-masts. These tempests are frequent here; and the nearer the shore, the more sensible are their effects.

On Friday the 21st, a tribe or family of about thirty persons came from the upper part of the sound to visit us. Their chief was named Tomatongeauroanuc: he was about the age of forty-five, and had a frank, cheerful countenance; and, indeed, the rest of his tribe were, upon the

whole, the handsomest of all the New-Zealanders that Captain Cook had ever seen. By this time upwards of two-thirds of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound had settled near us, numbers of whom daily resorted to the ships, and our encampment on shore; but the latter was most frequented, during the time when our people there were making seal blubber; for the savages were so fond of train oil, that they relished the very dregs of the casks, and skimmings of the kettle, and considered the pure stinking oil as a most delightful feast.

When we had procured a competent supply of hay, wood, and water, we struck our tents, and the next morning, which was the 24th, weighed out of the Cove. But the wind not being so fair as we could have wished, we were obliged to cast anchor again near the Isle of Motuara. While we were getting under sail, Tomatongeauoranuc, Matahouah, and many others of the natives, came to take leave of us. These two chiefs having requested Captain Cook to present them with some hogs and goats, he gave to Tomatongeauoranuc two pigs, a boar, and a sow; and to Matahouah two goats, a male and female, after they had promised not to destroy them. As for the animals, which Captain Furneaux had left here, Captain Cook was now told, that they were all dead; but he was afterwards informed, by the two New-Zealand youths who went away with

us, that Tiratou, a popular chief, had in his possession many cocks and hens, besides a fow.

Before we had been long at anchor near Motuara, several canoes, filled with natives, came towards us, and carried on a brisk trade with them for the curiosities of this place. In one of these canoes was Kahoora, whom Omai immediately pointed out to Captain Cook, and solicited him to shoot that chief: he also threatened to be himself his executioner, if he should ever presume to pay us another visit. These menaces of Omai had so little influence upon Kahoora, that he returned to us the next morning, accompanied with his whole family. Omai, having obtained Captain Cook's permission to ask him to come on board, introduced him into the cabin, saying, "There is Kahoora; dispatch him." But, fearing perhaps that he should be called upon to put his former threats in execution, he instantly retired. He soon, however, returned; and perceiving that the chief was unhurt, he earnestly remonstrated to Captain Cook on the subject, saying, that if a man killed another in England, he was hanged for it; but that Kahoora had killed ten, and therefore justly deserved death. These arguments, however plausible, had no weight with our Commodore, who desired Omai to ask the New-Zealand chief, why he had destroyed Captain Furneaux's people? Kahoora, confounded at this question, hung down his head, folded

his arms, and seemed in expectation of immediate death: but, as soon as he was assured of safety, he became chearful. He appeared, however, unwilling to answer the question which had been put to him, till after repeated promises that no violence should be offered to him. He then ventured to inform us, that one of the natives having brought a stone hatchet for the purpose of traffic, the person to whom it was offered took it, and refused either to return it, or give any thing in exchange; upon which the owner of it seized some bread by way of equivalent; and this gave rise to the quarrel that ensued. He also mentioned, that he himself, during the disturbance, had a narrow escape; for a musquet was levelled at him, which he found means to avoid by skulking behind the boat; and another man, who happened to stand close to him, was shot dead: upon which Kahoora attacked Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded the party, who defended himself with his hanger, with which he gave the chief a wound in his arm, till he was overpowered by superiority of numbers. Mr. Burney, whom Captain Furneaux dispatched the next day with an armed party in search of his people who were missing, had, upon discovering the melancholy proofs of this catastrophe, fired several vollies among the natives who were still on the spot, and were probably partaking of the horrid banquet of human flesh. It was reasonable

able to suppose that this firing was not ineffectual; but upon enquiry it appeared, that not a single person had been killed, or even hurt, by the shot which Mr. Burney's people had discharged.

Most of the natives we had met with, expected that Captain Cook would take vengeance on Kahoorā for his concern in the massacre; and many of them not only wished it, but testified their surprise at the Captain's forbearance and moderation. As the chief must have known this, it was a matter of astonishment that he so often put himself in the power of our Commodore. His two last visits, in particular, were made under such circumstances, that he could not have flattered himself with a prospect of escaping, had the Captain been inclined to detain him: and yet, when his first fears, on being questioned, had subsided, so far was he from entertaining uneasy sensations, that, on seeing in the cabin a portrait of a New-Zealander, he desired that his own likeness might be taken, and sat till Mr. Webber had finished his portrait, without the smallest token of impatience. Captain Cook admired his courage, and was pleased with the confidence which he reposed in him; for he placed his whole safety in the uniform declarations of the Captain, that he had always been a friend to the natives, and would continue in the same sentiments till they gave him reason to behave otherwise: that he should think no more of their barbarous treat-

ment of our countrymen, as that transaction had happened long ago; but that, if they should ever venture to make a second attempt of that kind, they might rest assured of meeting with an adequate punishment.

Before our arrival in New-Zealand, Omai had expressed a desire of taking one of the natives with him to his own country. He soon had an opportunity of gratifying his inclination, for a youth named Taweharooa, the only son of a deceased chief, offered to accompany him, and took up his residence on board. Captain Cook caused it to be made known to him and all his friends, that if the youth departed with us, he would never return. This declaration, however, had no effect. The day before we quitted the Cove, Tiratoutou, his mother, came to receive her last present from Omai; and the same evening she and her son parted, with all the marks of the tenderest affection. But she said she would weep no more, and faithfully kept her word; for the next morning, when she returned to take her last farewell of Taweharooa, she was quite cheerful all the time she remained on board, and departed with great unconcern. A boy of about ten years of age accompanied Taweharooa as a servant; his name was Kokoa. He was presented to Captain Cook by his own father, who parted with him with such indifference, as to strip him, and leave him entirely naked. The Cap-  
tain

tain having in vain endeavoured to convince these people of the great improbability of these youths ever returning home, at length consented to their going.

The inhabitants of New-Zealand seem to live under continual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other; most of their tribes having, as they think, sustained injuries from some other tribe, which they are ever eager to revenge: and it is not improbable, that the desire of a good meal is frequently a great incitement. They generally steal upon the adverse party in the night, and if they chance to find them unguarded, which is seldom the case, they kill every one without distinction, without sparing even the women and children: when they have completed the inhuman massacre, they either gorge themselves on the spot, or carry off as many dead bodies as they can, and feast on them at home, with the most horrid acts of brutality. If they are discovered before they have time to execute their sanguinary purpose, they usually steal off again, and sometimes they are pursued and attacked by the adverse party, in their turn. They never give quarter, or take prisoners, so that the vanquished must trust to flight alone for safety. From this state of perpetual hostility, and this destructive mode of carrying it on, a New-Zealander derives such habitual vigilance and circumspection, that he is scarce ever off his guard:  
and,

and, indeed, these people have the most powerful motives to be vigilant, as the preservation of both soul and body depends on it: for it is a part of their creed, that the soul of the man whose flesh is devoured by his enemies, is condemned to an incessant fire; while the soul of him whose body has been rescued from those that slew him, as well as the souls of those who die a natural death, ascend to the mansions of the gods. Captain Cook having asked them, whether they eat the flesh of such friends as had lost their lives in war, but whose bodies had been prevented from falling into the enemy's hands, they answered in the negative, and expressed their abhorrence of the idea.

Their ordinary method of disposing of their dead is to commit their bodies to the earth; but when they have more of their slain enemies than they can conveniently eat, they throw them into the sea. There are no *morais*, or other places of public worship among them; but they have priests, who pray to the gods for the success of their temporal affairs. The principles of their religion, of which we know but little, are strongly instilled into them from their infancy. We observed a remarkable instance of this in a youth, who abstained from eating during the greatest part of the day, merely on account of his hair being cut, though every method was practised that could induce him to change his resolution. He  
said

said that the *eatooa*, or deity, would kill him if he eat any thing on that day. Towards the evening, however, his religious scruples gave way to the importunate cravings of appetite, and he eat, though sparingly.

Notwithstanding the divided state in which these people live, travelling strangers, whose designs are honourable, are well received and entertained; but it is expected that they will remain no longer than their business requires. It is thus that a trade for green talc, which they call *poenamoo*, is carried on. They informed us, that none of this stone is to be found, except at a place which bears its name, near the head of Queen Charlotte's Sound. We were told many fabulous and improbable stories concerning this stone, one of which is, that it is originally a fish, which they strike with a gig in the water, and having tied a rope to it, drag it to the shore, to which they fasten it, and it afterwards hardens into a stone. As it is fished out of a large lake, it is probable that it may be brought from the mountains, and deposited in the water, by means of the torrents. This lake is called by the inhabitants *Tavai Poenamoo*, or the water of green talc.

The New-Zealanders have adopted polygamy amongst them; and it is common for one man to have two or three wives. The women are ripe for marriage at an early age; and those who are

unmarried, find difficulty in procuring subsistence.

These people seem perfectly contented with the small degree of knowledge they possess, for they make no attempts to improve it. They are not remarkably curious, nor do new objects strike them with much surprise, for they scarce fix their attention for a moment. Omai, indeed, being a great favourite with them, would sometimes attract a circle about him; but they listened to his speeches with very little eagerness.

On our enquiring of Taweharooa, how many ships, resembling ours, had ever arrived in Queen Charlotte's Sound, or in its neighbourhood, he gave us an account of one entirely unknown to us. This vessel, he said, had put into a harbour on the north-west coast of Teerawitte, a few years before Captain Cook arrived in the Sound in the Endeavour. He further informed us, that the Captain of her, during his continuance here, had cohabited with a female of the country, who had borne him a son that was still living. He also mentioned, that this ship first introduced the venereal disease among the natives of New-Zealand. This dreadful disorder is now but too common among them. The only method they put in practice as a remedy, is to give the patient the use of a kind of hot bath, produced by the steam of certain green plants placed over hot stones.

Taweharooa's

Taweharooa's intelligence induced us to believe, that a ship had really been at Teerawitte previous to Captain Cook's arrival in the Endeavour, as it corresponded with what the Captain had formerly heard; for, towards the latter end of 1773, some of the natives informed him of a ship's having put into a port on the coast of Teerawittee.

We had another piece of information from Taweharooa, importing that there are here snakes and lizards of an enormous size. The latter were described by him as being eight feet long, and equal to a man's body in circumference. He said that they burrow in the ground; that they sometimes seize and devour men, and are killed by making fires at the mouths of their holes. We could not misunderstand him with respect to the animal; for, in order to shew us what he meant, he drew, with his own hand, very good representations of a lizard and snake on a piece of paper.

Though much has been said concerning this country and its inhabitants, in the accounts of Captain Cook's two former voyages, yet the remarks of Mr. Anderson, being the result of accurate observation, must not be considered as altogether superfluous. The reader will find them in the succeeding chapter.

The longitude of Ship-cove, by lunar observations, is  $174^{\circ} 25' 15''$  east; its latitude  $41^{\circ} 6'$  south.

C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The Country near Queen Charlotte's Sound described—The Fertility of the Soil—Temperature of the Climate—Rain and Winds—Plants—Birds—Fish—Animals—Description of the Persons of the Inhabitants—Dress—Ornaments—Buildings—Canoes or Boats—Food, and Method of Cookery—Arts—Weapons—Horrid Cruelty to their Enemies, whose Bodies they mangle and eat—Various other Customs.*

**A**BOUT Queen Charlotte's Sound the land is uncommonly mountainous, rising immediately from the sea into large hills. At remote distances are vallies, terminating each towards the sea in a small cove, with a pebbly or sandy beach; behind which are flat places, where the natives usually build their huts. This situation is the more convenient, as a brook of fine water runs through every cove, and empties itself into the sea.

The bases of these mountains, towards the shore, are constituted of a brittle yellowish sand-stone, which acquires a blueish cast where it is laved by the sea. At some places it runs in horizontal, and, at others, in oblique strata. The mould or soil by which it is covered resembles marle, and is, in general, a foot or two in thickness.

The

The luxuriant growth of the productions here, sufficiently indicates the quality of the soil. The hills, except a few towards the sea, are one continued forest of lofty trees, flourishing with such uncommon vigour, as to afford an august prospect to the admirers of the sublime and beautiful works of nature.

This extraordinary strength in vegetation is, doubtless, greatly assisted by the agreeable temperature of the climate; for, at this time, though answering to our month of August, the weather was not so warm as to be disagreeable; nor did it raise the thermometer higher than  $66^{\circ}$ . The winter also seems equally mild with respect to cold; for in the month which corresponds to our December, the mercury was never lower than  $48^{\circ}$ , the trees at the same time retaining their verdure, as if in the height of summer. It is supposed their foliage remains, till pushed off in spring by the succeeding leaves.

Though the weather is generally good, it is sometimes windy, with heavy rain; which, however, is never excessive, and does not last above a day. In short, this would be one of the finest countries upon earth, were it not so extremely hilly; which, supposing the woods to be cleared away, would leave it less proper for pasturage than flat land; and infinitely less so for cultivation, which could never be effected here by the plough.

The

The large trees on the hills are principally of two sorts. One of them, of the size of our largest firs, grows nearly after their manner. This supplied the place of spruce in making beer; which we did, with a decoction of its leaves fermented with sugar or treacle; and this liquor was acknowledged to be little inferior to American spruce-beer. The other sort of tree is like a maple, and often grows very large, but is fit only for fuel; the wood of that, and of the preceding, being too heavy for masts, yards, &c.

A greater variety of trees grow on the flats behind the beaches: two of these bear a kind of plum, of the size of prunes; the one, which is yellow, is called karraca, and the other, which is black, called maitao; but neither of them had a pleasant taste, though eaten both by our people and the natives.

On the eminences which jut out into the sea, grows a species of philadelphus, and a tree bearing flowers almost like myrtle. We used the leaves of the philadelphus as tea, and found them an excellent substitute for the oriental sort.

A kind of wild celery, which grows plentifully in almost every cove, may be reckoned among the plants that were useful to us; and another that we used to call scurvy-grass. Both sorts were boiled daily with wheat ground in a mill, for the people's breakfast, and with their pease-soup for dinner. Sometimes also they were used as fallad,

or

or dressed as greens. In all which ways they are excellent; and, together with the fish, with which we were amply supplied, they formed a most desirable refreshment.

The known kinds of plants to be found here are bindweed, night-shade, nettles, a shrubby speedwell, sow-thistles, virgin's bower, vanelloe, French willow, euphorbia, crane's-bill, cudweed, rushes, bulrushes, flax, all-heal, American night-shade, knot-grass, brambles, eye-bright, and groundsel; but the species of each are different from any we have in Europe.

There are a great number of other plants, but one in particular deserves to be noticed here, as the garments of the natives are made from it. A fine silky flax is produced from it, superior in appearance to any thing we have in this country, and, perhaps, as strong. It grows in all places near the sea, and sometimes a considerable way up the hills, in bunches or tufts, bearing yellowish flowers on a long stalk.

It is remarkable, that the greatest part of the trees and plants were of the berry-bearing kind; of which, and other seeds, Mr. Anderson brought away about thirty different sorts.

The birds, of which there is a tolerable good stock, are almost entirely peculiar to the place. It would be difficult and fatiguing to follow them, on account of the quantity of underwood, and the climbing plants; yet any person, by conti-

ning in one place, may shoot as many in a day as would serve seven or eight persons. The principal kinds are large brown parrots, with grey heads, green parroquets, large wood-pigeons, and two sorts of cuckoos. A gros-beak, about the size of a thrush, is frequent; as is also a small green bird, which is almost the only musical one to be found here; but his melody is so sweet, and his notes so varied, that any one would imagine himself surrounded by a hundred different sorts of birds, when the little warbler is exerting himself. From this circumstance it was named the mocking-bird. There are also three or four sorts of smaller birds, and, among the rocks, are found black sea-pies with red bills, and crested shags of a leaden colour. About the shore, there are a few sea gulls, some blue herons, wild ducks, plovers, and some sand-larks. A snipe was shot here, which differs but little from that of Europe.

Most of the fish we caught by the seine were elephant-fish, mullets, soles, and flounders; but the natives supplied us with a sort of sea-bream, large conger-eels, and a fish of five or six pounds weight, called a mogge by the natives. With a hook and line we caught a blackish fish, called cole-fish by the seamen, but differing greatly from that of the same name in Europe. We also got a sort of small salmon, skate, gurnards, and nurses. The natives sometimes furnished us with hake, paracutas, parrot-fish, a sort of mac-karel,

karel, and leather jackets; besides another, which is extremely scarce, of the figure of a dolphin, a black colour, and strong bony jaws. These, in general, are excellent to eat; but the small salmon, cole-fish, and mogge, are superior to the others.

Great quantities of excellent muscles inhabit among the rocks; one sort of which exceeds a foot in length. Many cockles are found buried in the sand of the small beaches; and, in some places, oysters, which, though very small, have a good flavour. There are also periwinkles, limpets, wilks, sea-eggs, star-fish, and some beautiful sea-ears, many of which are peculiar to the place. The natives also furnished us with some excellent cray-fish.

Insects here are not very numerous: we saw some butterflies, two sorts of dragon-flies, some small grasshoppers, several sorts of spiders, some black ants, and scorpion flies innumerable, with whose chirping the woods resounded. The sand-fly, which is the only noxious one, is very numerous here, and is almost as disagreeable as the musquitoe. The only reptiles we saw here, were two or three sorts of inoffensive lizards.

In this extensive land, it is remarkable that there should not even be the traces of any quadruped, except a few rats, and a kind of fox dog, which is kept by the natives as a domestic animal.

They have not any mineral deserving notice, but a green jasper or serpent stone, of which the tools and ornaments of the inhabitants are made. This is held in high estimation among them; and they entertain some superstitious notions about the mode of its generation, which we could not comprehend: they say it is taken from a large river far to the southward; it is disposed in the earth in detached pieces like flints, and, like them, the edges are covered with a whitish crust.

The natives, in general, are not so well formed, especially about the limbs, as the Europeans, nor do they exceed them in stature. Their sitting so much on their hams, and being deprived, by the mountainous disposition of the country, of using that kind of exercise which would render the body straight and well-proportioned, is probably the occasion of the want of due proportion. Many of them, indeed, are perfectly formed and some are very large boned and muscular; but very few among them were corpulent.

Their features are various, some resembling Europeans, and their colour is of different casts, from a deepish black to an olive or yellowish tinge. In general, however, their faces are round, their lips rather full, and their noses, (though not flat) large towards the point. An aquiline nose was not to be seen among them: their eyes are large, and their teeth are commonly broad, white, and regular. The hair, in general, is  
black,

black, strong, and straight; it is commonly cut short on the hinder part, and the rest tied on the crown of the head. Some, indeed, have brown hair, and others a sort that is naturally disposed to curl. The countenance of the young is generally free and open; but, in many of the men, it has a serious or sullen cast. The men are larger than the women; and the latter are not distinguished by peculiar graces, either of form or features.

Both sexes are clothed alike; they have a garment, made of the silky flax already mentioned, about five feet in length, and four in breadth. This appears to be their principal manufacture, which is performed by knotting. Two corners of this garment pass over the shoulders, and they fasten it on the breast with that which covers the body: it is again fastened about the belly with a girdle made of mat. Sometimes they cover it with dog-skin or large feathers. Many of them wear coats over this garment, extending from the shoulders to the heels. The most common covering, however, is a quantity of the sedge plant above-mentioned, badly manufactured, fastened to a string, and thrown over the shoulders, whence it falls down on all sides to the middle of the thighs. When they sit down in this habit, they could hardly be distinguished from large grey stones, if their black heads did not project beyond their coverings.

They adorn their heads with feathers, combs of bone or wood, with pearl shell, and the inner skin of leaves. Both men and women have their ears slit, in which are hung beads, pieces of jasper, or bits of cloth. Some have the *sceptum* of the nose bored in its lower part, but we never saw any ornament wore in that part; though a twig was passed through it by one of them, to shew that it was occasionally used for that purpose.

Many are stained in the face with curious figures, of a black or dark blue colour; but it is not certain whether this is intended to be ornamental, or as a mark of particular distinction: the women are marked only on their lips and chins; and both sexes besmear their heads and faces with a greasy reddish paint. The women also wear necklaces of shark's teeth, or bunches of long beads; and a few of them have small triangular aprons, adorned with feathers or pieces of pearl shells, fastened about the waist with a double or treble set of cords.

They live in the small coves already mentioned, sometimes in single families, and sometimes in companies of perhaps forty or fifty. Their huts, which are in general most miserable lodging places, are built contiguous to each other. The best we saw was built in the manner of one of our country barns, and was about six feet in height, fifteen in breadth, and thirty-three in length,

length. The inside was strong and regular, well fastened by means of withes, &c. and painted red and black. At one end it had a hole serving as a door to creep out at, and another considerably smaller, seemingly for the purpose of letting out the smoke. This, however, ought to be considered as one of their palaces, for many of their huts are not of half the size, and seldom are more than four feet in height.

They have no other furniture than a few small bags or baskets, in which they deposit their fishing-hooks and other trifles. They sit down in the middle round a small fire, and probably sleep in the same situation, without any other covering than what they have worn in the day.

Fishing is their principal support, in which they use different kinds of nets, or wooden fishing-hooks pointed with bone; but made in so extraordinary a manner, that it appears astonishing how they can answer such a purpose.

Their boats consist of planks raised upon each other, and fastened with strong withes. Many of them are fifty feet long. Sometimes they fasten two together with rafters, which we call a double canoe: they frequently carry upwards of thirty men, and have a large head, ingeniously carved and painted, which seems intended to represent a man enraged. Their paddles are narrow, pointed, and about five feet long. Their

sail, which is very little used, is a mat formed into a triangular shape.

They dress their fish by roasting, or rather baking them, being entirely ignorant of the art of boiling. It is thus they also dress the root of the large fern-tree, in a hole prepared for that purpose: when dressed, they split it, and find a gelatinous substance within, somewhat like sago powder. The smaller fern-root seems to be their substitute for bread, being dried and carried about with them, together with great quantities of dried fish, when they go far from their habitations.

When the weather will not suffer them to go to sea, muscles and sea-ears supply the place of other fish. Sometimes, but not often, they kill a few penguins, rails, and shags, which enable them to vary their diet. Considerable numbers of their dogs are also bred for food; but they depend principally on the sea for their subsistence, by which they are most bountifully supplied.

They are as filthy in their feeding as in their persons, which often emit a very offensive effluvia, from the quantity of grease about them, and from their never washing their cloaths; their heads are plentifully stocked with vermin, which they sometimes eat. Large quantities of stinking train oil, and blubber of seals, they would eagerly devour. When on board the ships, they not only emptied the lamps, but actually swallowed

lowed the cotton with equal voracity. Though the inhabitants of Van Diemen's Land would not even taste our bread, these people devoured it with the greatest eagerness, even when it was rotten and mouldy.

In point of ingenuity, they are not behind any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances: for, without the assistance of metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their subsistence, cloathing, and warlike weapons, with neatness, strength, and convenience. Their principal mechanical tool is formed in the manner of an adze, and is made of the serpent-stone or jasper: their chissel and gouge are furnished from the same material, though they are sometimes composed of black solid stone. Carving, however, is their master-piece, which appears upon the most trifling things: the ornaments on the heads of their canoes, not only display much design, but execution. Their cordage for fishing lines is not inferior to that in this country, and their nets are equally good. A shell, a bit of flint, or jasper; is their substitute for a knife; and a shark's tooth, fixed in the end of a piece of wood, is their auger. They have a saw made of some jagged fishes teeth, fixed on a piece of wood nicely carved; but this is used for no other purpose, than to cut up the bodies of those whom they kill in battle.

Though

Though no people are more ready to resent an injury, yet they take every opportunity of being insolent, when they apprehend there is no danger of punishment; whence it may be concluded, that their eagerness to resent injuries, is rather an effect of a furious disposition than genuine bravery. They are naturally mistrustful and suspicious, for such as are strangers never venture immediately to visit our ships, but keep at a small distance in their boats, observing our motions, and hesitating whether they should risk their safety with us. They are to the last degree dishonest, and steal every thing within their reach, if they suppose they can escape detection; and, in trading, they seem inclined to take every possible advantage; for they never trust an article out of their hands for examination, and seem highly pleased if they have over-reached you in a bargain.

Such conduct indeed is not surprising, when it is considered that there appears to be but little subordination, and few, if any, laws for the punishment of transgressors. No man's authority extends beyond his own family; and when they join, at any time, for mutual defence or safety, those among them who are most eminent for valour and prudent conduct, are directors.

Their public contentions are almost perpetual, for war is their principal profession, as appears from their number of weapons, and their dexterity

terity in using them. - Their arms are spears, patoos and halberts, and sometimes stones. The first are from five to thirty feet long, made of hard wood and pointed. The patoo is about eighteen inches long, of an elliptical shape, with a handle made of wood, stone, &c. and appears to be their principal dependance in battle. The halbert is about five or six feet in length, tapering at one end with a carved head, and broad or flat, with sharp edges, at the other.

Before the onset, they join in a war song, keeping the exactest time; and, by degrees, work themselves into a kind of frantic fury, accompanied with the most horrid distortions of their tongues, eyes and mouths, in order to deter their enemies. To this succeeds a circumstance that is most horrid, cruel, and disgraceful to human nature, which is mangling and cutting to pieces (even when not perfectly dead) the bodies of their enemies; and, after roasting them, devouring the flesh with peculiar pleasure and satisfaction.

It might naturally be supposed, that those who could be capable of such excess of cruelty, must be totally destitute of every humane feeling; and yet they lament the loss of their friends in a manner the most tender and affectionate. Both men and women, upon the death of their relations or friends, bewail them with the most miserable cries; at the same time cutting large gashes in their  
their

their cheeks and foreheads, with shells, or pieces of flint, till the blood flows copiously, and mixes with their tears. They also carve a resemblance of an human figure, and hang it about their necks, as a memorial of those who were dear to them. They also perform the ceremony of lamenting and cutting for joy, at the return of a friend who has been some time absent.

The practices of the fathers, whether good or bad, their children are, at an early age, instructed in; so that you find a child of either sex, of the age of nine or ten years, able to imitate the frightful motions and gestures of the men. They also sing, and with some degree of melody, the traditions and actions of their forefathers, with which they are immoderately delighted, and pass much of their time in these amusements, accompanied sometimes with a kind of flute.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable. Whatever qualities are requisite to make a language musical, obtain to a considerable degree in this, if we may judge from the melody of their songs. It is not, indeed, so comprehensive as our European languages, which owe their perfection to long and gradual improvement.

A  
V O Y A G E  
T O T H E  
P A C I F I C O C E A N.  
B O O K I I.

CONTAINING OUR ADVENTURES FROM OUR DE-  
PARTURE FROM NEW-ZEALAND, TILL OUR AR-  
RIVAL AT OTAHEITE, OR THE SOCIETY ISLANDS.

---

C H A P. I.

*Course of the Voyage—Behaviour of the two New-  
Zealand Youths on board—The Island of Man-  
geez discovered—Account of the Persons and Dress  
of the Inhabitants—Mourooa and his Companion  
described—Figure of a Mangeean Canoe—The  
Coast of the Island examined—Impracticability of  
landing—Transactions with the Natives—De-  
scription of the Island—Disposition and Manners  
of the Mangeeans.*

**I**N the morning of the 25th of February, we  
left the Sound, and made sail through Cook's  
Straits. On the 27th, Cape Palliser bear-  
ing west about seven leagues distant, we had a  
fine gale, and steered towards the north-east. As  
soon

foon as we had loft sight of land, our two young New-Zealanders heartily repented of the adventurous step they had taken. Though we endeavoured, as far as lay in our power, to sooth them, they wept, both in public and private; and gave vent to their sorrows in a kind of song, which seemed to express their praises of their country and people, from which they were now, in all probability, to be for ever separated. They continued in this state for several days, till, at length, the agitation of their minds began to subside, and their sea-sickness, which had aggravated their grief, wore off. Their lamentations then became less and less frequent; their native country, their kindred and friends, were gradually forgotten, and they appeared to be firmly attached to us.

On the 28th at noon, being in the latitude of  $41^{\circ} 17'$  south, and in the longitude of  $177^{\circ} 17'$  east, we tacked about and stood to the south-east, with a gentle breeze at east-north-east, which afterwards veered to north-east, in which point the wind remained two days, sometimes blowing a fresh gale with squalls and rain. On the 2d of March it shifted to north-west, and afterwards to south-west, between which point and the north it continued to blow, sometimes very moderately, and at other times a strong gale. With this wind we steered north east by east and east, with all the sail we could carry, till Tuesday the 11th, when  
it

it veered to north-east and south-east; we then stood to the north and the south-east, as the wind would permit, till the 16th, when having a gale from the north, we stood to the east. The next day we proceeded to the north-east; but, as the wind frequently veered to east and east-north-east, we often made no better than a northerly course. The hopes, however, of the wind coming more southerly, or from the westward, a little without the Tropic of Capricorn, encouraged the Commodore to continue this course. It was indeed necessary that we should run all hazards, as our proceeding to the north this summer, in prosecution of the principal object of the expedition, entirely depended on our having a quick passage to Otaheite, or the Society Isles.

We crossed the Tropic on the 27th, the wind, for a considerable time before, having remained almost invariably fixed at east south-east. In all this run, we observed nothing that could induce us to suppose we had sailed near the land, except occasionally a tropic bird. In the latitude of  $34^{\circ} 20'$ , longitude  $199^{\circ}$ , we passed the trunk of a tree, which appeared much weather-beaten, and was covered with barnacles. On the 29th, as we were standing to the north-east, the Discovery made the signal of seeing land. We soon found it to be a small island, and stood for it till the evening, when it was at the distance of two

OF

or three leagues. The next morning, at day-break, we bore up for the west side of the island, and saw several people wading to the reef, where, as they observed the ship leaving them quickly, they remained. But others, who soon appeared, followed her course; and some of them assembled in small bodies, making great shouts.

Upon our nearer approach to the shore, we saw many of the natives running along the beach, and, by the assistance of our glasses, could perceive that they were armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or, as some of us supposed, with invitations to land. Most of them were naked, except having a kind of girdle, which was brought up between their thighs; but some of them wore about their shoulders pieces of cloth of various colours, white, striped, or chequered; and almost all of them had about their heads a white wrapper, in some degree resembling a turban. They were of a tawny complexion, robust, and about the middle size.

A small canoe was now launched from the most distant part of the beach, and a man getting into it, put off, as with a view of reaching the ship; but his courage failing, he quickly returned towards the beach. Another man soon after joined him in the canoe; and then both of them paddled towards us. They seemed, however, afraid to approach, till their apprehensions were

were partly removed by Omai, who addressed them in the language of Otaheite. Thus encouraged, they came near enough to receive some nails and beads, which, being tied to some wood, were thrown into the canoe. They however put the wood aside without untying the things from it, which may perhaps have proceeded from superstition; for we were informed by Omai, that when they observed us offering presents to them, they requested something for their *Eatooa*. On Omai's asking them whether they ever eat human flesh, they replied in the negative, with equal abhorrence and indignation. One of them, named Mourooa, being questioned with regard to a scar on his forehead, said it was the consequence of a wound he had received in fighting with the natives of an island lying towards the north-east, who sometimes invaded them. They afterwards laid hands on a rope, but would not venture on board, telling Omai, that their countrymen on shore had suggested to them this caution; and had likewise directed them to enquire whence our ship came, and to procure information of the name of the Captain. Their chief, they said, was called Orooaeka. Upon our enquiring the name of the island, they told us it was *Mangya*, or *Mangeea*, to which they sometimes added *nooe, nai, naiwa*.

The features of Mourooa were agreeable, and his disposition, to all appearance, was no less so;

for he exhibited some droll gesticulations, which indicated humour and good-nature. He also made others of a serious kind, and repeated some words with an air of devotion, before he would venture to take hold of the rope at the stern of the ship. He was lusty and well made, though not tall. His complexion was nearly of the same cast with that of the natives of the most southern parts of Europe. His companion was not so handsome. They both had strong, straight, black hair, tied together on the top of their heads with a piece of white cloth. They had long beards; and the inside of their arms, from the elbow to the shoulder, and some other parts, were *tatoed* or punctured. The lobe of their ears was slit to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife and some beads, which we had given him. The same person had hung about his neck, by way of ornament, two polished pearl-shells, and a bunch of human hair, loosely twisted together. They wore a kind of girdles, which we found were a substance manufactured from the *morus papyrifera*, and glazed like those used in the Friendly Islands. They had on their feet a sort of sandals, made of a grassy substance interwoven, which we observed were also worn by those whom we had seen on the beach. The canoe in which they came was the only one we saw. It was very narrow, and not above ten feet long, but strong and neatly made. The lower part

*Two of the same Nation.*



1790

*of the Nation of the Iroquois.*



1790

*of the Nation of the Iroquois.*



part was of white wood; but the upper part was black, and their paddles were made of wood of the same colour: these were broad at one end, and blunted, and about three feet long. The fore part had a flat board fastened over it, which projected out, to prevent the water from getting in. It had an upright stern, five feet high, which terminated at the top in a kind of fork. They paddled indifferently either end of the canoe forward.

As soon as the ships were in a proper station, Captain Cook sent out two boats to endeavour to find a convenient place for landing. In one of them he went himself, and had no sooner put off from the ship, than the two men in the canoe paddled towards his boat; and when they were come along-side, Mourōoa, without hesitation, stept into her. Omai, who was with the Captain, was desired to enquire of the islander where we could land; upon which he directed us to two places. But we soon observed, with regret, that the attempt at either place was impracticable, on account of the surf, unless at the risque of having our boats destroyed. Nor were we more successful in our search for anchorage, as we could find no bottom till within a cable's length of the breakers, where we met with from forty to twenty fathoms depth, over sharp rocks of coral.

While we thus reconnoitred the shore of Mangēea, the natives thronged down upon the reef,

all armed. Mourooa, who still remained in the boat with Captain Cook, thinking, perhaps, that this warlike appearance deterred us from landing, commanded them ~~to retire~~. As many of them complied, we imagined, that he was a person of some consequence: indeed, if we did not misunderstand him, he was brother to the king of the island. Several of them, instigated by curiosity, swam from the shore to the boats, and came on board them without reserve. We even found some difficulty in keeping them out, and could scarce prevent their pilfering whatever they could lay hands upon. At length, when they observed us returning to the ships, they all left us except Mourooa, who, though not without manifest indication of fear, accompanied the Commodore on board the Resolution. The cattle and other new objects that he saw there, did not strike him with much surprize; his mind, perhaps, being too much occupied about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other things. He seemed very uneasy, and gave us but little new intelligence; and therefore, after he had continued a short time on board, Captain Cook ordered a boat to carry him towards the land. In his way out of the cabin, happening to stumble over one of the goats, he stopped, looked at the animal, and asked Omai what bird it was; but not receiving an immediate answer from him, he put the same question to some of the people who  
were

were upon deck. The boat having conveyed him near the surf, he leaped into the water, and swam ashore. His countrymen, eager to learn from him what he had seen, flocked round him as soon as he had landed; in which situation they remained, when we lost sight of them. We hoisted in the boat as soon as she returned, and made sail to the northward. Thus we were obliged to leave this fine island unvisited, which seemed capable of supplying all our necessities. It is situate in the longitude of  $201^{\circ} 53'$  east, and in the latitude of  $21^{\circ} 57'$  south.

Those parts of the coast of Mangea which fell under our observation, are guarded by a reef of coral rock, against which a heavy surf is continually breaking. The island is about five leagues in circumference, and though of a moderate and pretty equal height, may be seen in clear weather at the distance of ten leagues. In the interior parts, it rises into small hills, whence there is an easy descent to the shore, which, in the south-west part, is steep, though not very high, and has several excavations made by the dashing of the waves against a brownish sand-stone, of which it consists. The descent here abounds with trees of a deep green, which seem to be all of one sort, except nearest the shore, where we observed numbers of that species of *dracæna* found in the woods of New-Zealand. The shore, on the north-west part, terminates in a sandy beach.

beach, beyond which the land is broken into small chasms, and has a broad border of trees which resemble tall willows. Further up, on the ascent, the trees were of the deep green above-mentioned, which some of us imagined to be the *rima*, intermixed with cocoa-palms, and a few other sorts. Some trees of a higher sort were thinly scattered on the hills, the other parts of which were either covered with something like fern, or were bare, and of a reddish colour. The island, upon the whole, has a pleasing appearance, and might, by proper cultivation, be made a beautiful spot.

The natives appearing to be both numerous and well fed, it is highly probable, that such articles of provision as the island produces are found in great abundance. Our friend Mourooa informed us, that they had no hogs nor dogs, though they had heard of both those animals; but that they had plantains, taro, and bread-fruit. The only birds we observed, were some terns, noddies, white egg-birds, and one white heron.

The language of the Mangeeans is a dialect of that of Otaheite; but their pronunciation is more guttural. They resemble the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Marquesas in the beauty of their persons; and their general disposition also seems to correspond with that of the first-mentioned people; for they are not only lively and cheerful, but are acquainted with all the lascivious gesticulations

culations practised by the Otaheiteans in their dances. We had likewise reason to suppose, that they have similar methods of living: for, though we had not an opportunity of seeing many of their habitations, we observed one house near the beach, which, in its mode of construction, differed little from those of Ótaheite. It appeared to be seven or eight feet high, and about thirty in length, with an open end, which represented an ellipse, or oval, transversely divided. It was pleasantly situated in a grove.

These people salute strangers by joining noses, and taking the hand of the person whom they accost, which they rub with some force upon their mouth and nose. It is worthy of remark, that the inhabitants of the Palaos, New Philippine, or rather Caroline Islands, though at the distance of near 1500 leagues from Manglea, have a similar method of salutation.

## C H A P. II.

*An Island named Wateoo discovered—Visits from the Inhabitants on board the Ships—Their Persons and Dress described—The Coast of the Island examined—Lieutenants Gore and Burney, Mr. Anderson and Omai, sent on Shore—Mr. Anderson's Account of their Reception—They are introduced to three Chiefs—Dance of twenty young Women described—Omai's Apprehensions of being roasted—The Islanders send Provisions on board—Further Description of the Natives—Of their double Canoes—Trees and Plants—Omai's Expedient to prevent being detained on Shore—He meets with three of his Countrymen—Account of their distressful Voyage—Additional Remarks relative to Wateoo.*

**W**E quitted Mangeea in the afternoon of the 30th of March, and proceeding on a northerly course, we again discovered land, on the 31st, at the distance of nine or ten leagues. The next morning we were abreast of its north end, within four leagues of it. It now appeared to us to be an island nearly of the same extent with that which we had just left. Another island, much smaller, was also descried right a-head. Though we could soon have reached this, we preferred the larger one, as being most likely to furnish

furnish food for the cattle. We therefore made sail to it; but there being little wind, and that unfavourable, we were still about two leagues to leeward at eight o'clock the succeeding morning. The Commodore, soon after, dispatched three armed boats, under the command of Mr. Gore, his First Lieutenant, in search of a landing-place and anchoring-ground. Mean-while we plied up under the island with the ships. As our boats were putting off, we saw several canoes coming from the shore, which repaired first to the Discovery, as that ship was the nearest. Not long after, three of these canoes, each conducted by one man, came along-side of the Resolution. They are long and narrow, and are supported by out-riggers: the head is flat above, but prow-like below; and the stern is about four feet high. We bestowed on our visitors some knives, beads, and other trifles; and they gave us some coconuts, in consequence of our having asked for them; but they did not part with them by way of exchange, as they seemed to have no idea of barter or traffic. One of them, after a little persuasion, came on board; and the other two soon followed his example. They appeared to be perfectly at their ease, and free from all apprehension. After their departure, a man arrived in another canoe, bringing a bunch of plantains as a present to Captain Cook, who gave him, in return, a piece of red cloth and an axe.

We

We were afterwards informed by Omai, that this present had been sent from the king of the island. Soon after, a double canoe, containing twelve of the islanders, came towards us. On approaching the ship, they recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of them first giving the word before each repetition. Having finished this solemn chant, they came along-side, and asked for the chief. As soon as Captain Cook had made his appearance, a pig and some coconuts were conveyed into the ship; and the Captain was also presented with a piece of matting, by the principal person in the canoe, when he and his companions had got on board.

These new visitors were introduced into the cabin, and conducted to other parts of the ship. Though some objects seemed to surprise them, nothing could fix their attention. They were afraid to venture near the cows and horses, of whose nature they could form no conception. As for the sheep and goats, they gave us to understand, that they knew them to be birds. It is a matter of astonishment, that human ignorance could ever make so ridiculous a mistake, as there is not the smallest resemblance between any winged animal and a sheep or goat. But these people seemed unacquainted with the existence of any other terrestrial animals, than hogs, dogs, and birds; and as they saw that our goats and sheep were very different from the two former, they absurdly

furdly inferred, that they must belong to the latter class, in which they knew there was a great variety of species. Though the Commodore bestowed on his new friend what he supposed would be the most acceptable present, yet he seemed somewhat disappointed. The Captain was afterwards informed that he eagerly wished to procure a dog, of which kind of animals this island was destitute, though the natives knew that the race existed in other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke had received a similar present, with the same view, from another man, who was equally disappointed in his expectations.

The islanders whom we had seen in those canoes were in general of the middle stature, and not unlike the Mangeeans. Their hair either flowed loosely over their shoulders; or was tied on the crown of the head; and though in some it was frizzled, yet that, as well as the straight sort, was long. Some of the young men were handsome. Like the inhabitants of Mangeea, they wore girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which were brought between their thighs. Their ears were bored, and they wore about their necks, by way of ornament, a sort of broad grass, stained with red, and strung with berries of the night-shade. Many of them were curiously marked or *tattooed* from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs; which made them appear as if they wore boots. Their beards were long, and

and they had a kind of sandals on their feet. They were frank and chearful in their deportment, and very friendly and good-natured.

Lieutenant Gore returned from his excursion in the afternoon, and informed Captain Cook, that he had examined the west side of the island, without being able to find a place where the ships could ride in safety, or a boat could land, the shore being bounded by a steep coral-rock, against which a continual surf broke with extraordinary violence. But as the inhabitants seemed extremely friendly, and as desirous of our landing as we ourselves were, Mr. Gore was of opinion, that they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats beyond the surf, such articles as we were most in need of. As we had little or no wind, the delay of a day or two was of small consideration; and therefore the Commodore resolved to try the experiment the next morning. We observed, soon after day-break, some canoes coming towards the ships; one of which directed its course to the Resolution. There were in it some cocoa-nuts and plantains, and a hog, for which the natives demanded a dog from us, refusing every other thing that we offered by way of exchange. Though one of our gentlemen on board had a dog and a bitch, which were great nuisances in the ship, and which might have served to propagate a race of so useful an animal in this island, yet he could not be prevailed upon to  
part

part with them. However, to gratify these people, Omai gave them a favourite dog he had brought from Great-Britain; with which acquisition they were highly pleased.

The same morning, which was the 3d of April, Captain Cook detached Mr. Gore with three boats, to make trial of the experiment which that officer had proposed. Two of the natives, who had been on board, accompanied him; and Omai served as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boats put off, and the wind being inconsiderable, it was twelve o'clock before we could work up to it. We then perceived our three boats just without the surf, and an amazing number of the islanders on the shore, abreast of them. Concluding from this, that Lieutenant Gore, and others of our people, had landed, we were impatient to know the event. With a view of observing their motions, and being ready to afford them such assistance as they might occasionally require, the Commodore kept as near the shore as was consistent with prudence. He was convinced, however, that the reef was a very effectual barrier between us and our friends who had landed, and put them completely out of the reach of our protection. But the natives, in all probability, were not so sensible of this circumstance as we were. Some of them, now and then, brought a few cocoa-nuts to the ships, and exchanged them for whatever was offered

ferred them. These occasional visits diminished the Captain's solicitude about our people who had landed; for, though we could procure no intelligence from our visitors, yet their venturing on board seemed to imply, that their countrymen on shore had made no improper use of the confidence reposed in them. At length, towards the evening, we had the satisfaction of seeing the boats return. When our people got on board, we found that Mr. Gore, Mr. Anderson, Mr. Burney, and Omai, were the only persons who had landed. The occurrences of the day were now fully reported to the Commodore by Mr. Gore. Mr. Anderson's account of their transactions, which was very circumstantial, and included some observations on the island and its inhabitants, was to the following purport.

They rowed towards a sandy beach, where a great number of the natives had assembled, and came to an anchor at the distance of a hundred yards from the reef. Several of the islanders swam off, bringing cocoa-nuts with them; and Omai gave them to understand, that our people were desirous of landing. Soon after, two canoes came off; and to inspire the natives with a greater confidence, Mr. Gore and his companions resolved to go unarmed. Mr. Anderson and Lieutenant Burney went in one canoe, a little before the other; and their conductors watching with great attention the motions of the surf, landed them

them safely on the reef. A native took hold of each of them, with a view of supporting them in walking over the rugged rocks to the beach, where several others, holding in their hands the green boughs of a species of *mimosa*, met them, and saluted them by the junction of noses. They were conducted from the beach amidst a vast multitude of people, who flocked around them with the most eager curiosity; and being led up an avenue of cocoa-palms, soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs. Proceeding onward among these, they found a person who appeared to be a chief, sitting cross-legged on the ground, and cooling himself with a kind of triangular fan, made from the leaf of the cocoa-palm, with a polished handle of black wood. He wore in his ears large bunches of beautiful feathers of a red colour; but had no other mark to distinguish him from the rest of the people. Our two countrymen having saluted him as he sat, marched on among the men armed with clubs, and came to a second chief, adorned like the former, and occupied, like him, in fanning himself. He was remarkable for his size and corpulence, though he did not appear to be above thirty years of age. They were conducted in the same manner to a third chief, who seemed older than the two former: he also was sitting, and was ornamented with red feathers. After they had saluted him as they had done the  
8 others,

others, he desired them both to sit down; which they willingly consented to, being greatly fatigued with walking, and with the extreme heat they felt amidst the surrounding multitude.

The people being ordered to separate, Messrs. Anderson and Burney saw, at a small distance, about twenty young women, adorned like the chiefs with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and solemn air, sung by them all. Our two gentlemen rose up, and walked forward to see these dancers, who, without paying them the smallest attention, still continued their dance. They seemed to be directed by a man, who, in the capacity of a prompter, mentioned the several motions they were to make. They never changed the spot, as Europeans do in dancing, and though their feet were not entirely at rest, this exercise consisted more in moving their fingers very nimbly, holding their hands at the same time in a prone position near the face, and occasionally clapping them together\*. Their dancing and singing were performed in the exactest concert. They had probably been instructed with extraordinary care, and selected for this ceremony, being superior in beauty to most of those who were in the crowd. They were, in general, rather stout, and of an olive complexion, with black hair flowing in ringlets down their necks.

\* The dances here described, bear a great resemblance to those of the natives of the Caroline Islands.

Their

Their shape and limbs were elegantly formed; for, their dress consisting only of a piece of glazed cloth tied round the waist, which scarcely reached so low as the knees, our gentlemen had an opportunity of observing almost every part. Their features were rather too full to constitute a perfect beauty. Their eyes were of a deep black, and their countenances expressed a great degree of modesty and complacency.

Before these beautiful females had finished their dance, our two countrymen heard a noise, as if some horses had been galloping towards them; and, on turning their eyes aside, they saw the people armed with clubs, who had been desired to entertain them, as they supposed, with an exhibition of their mode of fighting; which they now did, one party pursuing another who ran away.

Lieutenant Burney and Mr. Anderson began now to look about for Mr. Gore and Omai, whom they at length found coming up, as much incommoded by the crowds of people as themselves had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three chiefs; the names of whom were Otteroo, Taroa, and Fatouweera. Each of these expecting a present, Mr. Gore gave them such things as he had brought with him for that purpose; after which he informed the chiefs of his views in coming on shore, but was desired to wait till the next day before he should have what was wanted.

They now seemed to endeavour to separate our gentlemen from each other, every one of whom had his respective circle to surround, and gaze at him. Mr. Anderson was, at one time, upwards of an hour apart from his friends; and when he told the chief, who was near him, that he wished to speak to Omai, his request was peremptorily refused. At the same time he found that the people pilfered several trifling things which were in his pocket; and on his complaining of this treatment to the chief, he justified their behaviour. From these circumstances, Mr. Anderson began to apprehend, that they designed to detain our party among them. In this situation, he asked for something to eat; upon which they brought him some cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and a sort of four pudding; and when he complained of the heat, occasioned by the multitude of people, the chief himself condescended to fan him.

Mr. Burney going to the place where Mr. Anderson was, the latter informed him of his suspicions; and to try whether they were well founded or not, they both attempted to get to the beach; but they were soon stopped by some of the natives, who said they must return to the place which they had left. On their coming up, they found Omai under the same apprehensions; but he had, as he imagined, an additional motive of terror; for, having observed that they had dug

a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating, he could assign no other reason for it, than that they intended to roast and devour our party: he even went so far as to ask them whether that was their intention, at which they were much surpris'd, asking, in return, whether that custom prevailed among us.

Thus were Mr. Anderfon and the others detain'd the greatest part of the day, being sometimes separated, and sometimes together; but continually in a croud, who frequently desired them to uncover parts of their skin, the sight of which struck the islanders with admiration. They at the same time rifled the pockets of our countrymen; and one of them snatch'd from Mr. Gore a bayonet, which hung by his side. This being represent'd to one of the chiefs, he pretended to send a person in search of it, but probably countenanced the theft; for Omai, soon after, had a dagger stolen from his side in the same manner. They now brought some green boughs as emblems of friendship, and sticking the ends of them in the ground, desired that our party would hold them as they sat, giving them to understand, that they must stay and eat with them. The sight of a pig lying near the oven which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai's apprehensions of being put into it himself, and made him think that it might be intended for the repast of him and his three friends.

The chief also sent some of his people to provide food for the cattle, and they returned with a few plantain trees, which they conveyed to the boats. In the mean time, Messrs. Burney and Anderson made a second attempt to get to the beach; but, on their arrival, they found themselves watched by people who seemed to have been stationed there for that purpose; for, when Mr. Anderson endeavoured to wade in upon the reef, one of them dragged him back by his clothes. They also insisted upon his throwing down some pieces of coral that he had picked up, and, on his refusal to comply, took them from him by force. Nor would they suffer him to retain some small plants which he had gathered. They likewise took a fan from Mr. Burney, which, on his coming ashore, he had received as a present. Finding that obedience to their will was the only method of procuring better treatment, the gentlemen returned to the place they had quitted; and the natives now promised, that, after they had partaken of a repast which had been prepared for them, they should be furnished with a canoe to carry them off to their boats. Accordingly, the second chief to whom they had been presented, having seated himself on a low stool, and directed the multitude to form a large ring, made them sit down by him. A number of cocoa-nuts were now brought, with a quantity of baked plantains, and a piece of the pig that had been dressed, was placed

placed before each of them. Their fatigue, however, had taken away their appetites; but they eat a little to please their entertainers. It being now near sun-set, the islanders sent down to the beach the remainder of the provisions that had been dressed, to be carried to the ships. Our gentlemen found a canoe prepared to put them off to their boats, which the natives did with great caution; but as they were pushing the canoe into the surf, one of them snatched a bag out of her, which contained a pocket-pistol belonging to Mr. Anderson, who calling out to the thief with marks of the highest displeasure, he swam back to the canoe with the bag. The islanders then put them on board the boats, with the coconuts, plantains, and other provisions; and they immediately rowed back to the ships.

The restrained situation of these gentlemen gave them very little opportunity of observing the country: for they were seldom a hundred yards from the place where they had been introduced to the chiefs, and consequently were confined to the surrounding objects. The first thing that attracted their notice was the number of people, which must have been at least two thousand. Except a few, those who had come on board the ships were all of an inferior class; for a great number of those that our gentlemen met with on shore, had a superior dignity of demeanor, and their complexion was much whiter. In general,

neral, they had their hair, which was long and black, tied on the crown of the head. Many of the young men were perfect models in shape, and of a delicate complexion. The old men were, many of them, corpulent; and they, as well as the young, had a remarkable smoothness of skin. Their general dress consisted of a piece of cloth wrapped about the waist, but some had pieces of mats, most curiously variegated with black and white, formed into a kind of jacket without sleeves; while others wore conical caps made of the core of a cocoa-nut, interwoven with beads. In their ears, which were pierced, they hung pieces of the membranous part of some plant, or stuck there some odoriferous flower. The chiefs, and other persons of rank, had two little balls, with a common base, made of bone, which they hung round their necks with small cord. Red feathers are here considered as a particular mark of distinction; for none but the chiefs, and the young women who danced, assumed them. Some of the men were punctured all over the sides and back, and some of the women had the same ornament (if it deserves that name) on their legs. The elderly women had their hair cropped short, and many of them were cut all over the fore-part of the body in oblique lines. The wife of a chief appeared with her child, laid in a piece of red cloth, which had been presented to her husband; she suckled the infant much after the manner

ner of our women. Another chief introduced his daughter, who was young, beautiful, and modest. No personal deformities were observed in either sex, except in a few individuals who had scars of broad ulcers remaining on the face and other parts.

Many of the natives were armed with spears and clubs, the latter of which were generally about six feet long, made of a hard black wood, neatly polished. The spears were formed of the same wood, simply pointed, and were in general twelve feet long; but some were so short as to seem intended for darts.

They preserved their canoes from the sun under the shade of various trees. Our gentlemen saw eight or ten of them, all double ones; that is, two single ones fastened together by rafters lashed across. They were about four feet deep, and in length about twenty feet, and the sides were rounded with a plank raised upon them. Two of these canoes were curiously stained all over with black, in innumerable small figures, as triangles, squares, &c. and were far superior to any thing of the kind Mr. Anderson had ever seen at any other island in the South-Sea. The paddles were almost elliptical, and about four feet long.

Most of the trees observed by Mr. Anderson, were cocoa-palms, some species of *bibiscus*, a sort of *euphorbia*, and many of the same kind he had seen at Mangeea. The latter are tall and slender,

der, resembling a cypress; and are called by the natives *etoa*. He also saw a species of *convolvulus*, and some treacle-mustard; besides which, there are doubtless other plants and fruit-trees which he had not an opportunity of seeing. The soil, towards the sea, is nothing more than a bank of coral, generally steep and rugged, which, though it has probably been for many centuries exposed to the weather, has suffered no further change than becoming black on its surface. The reef or rock, with which the shore is lined, runs to different breadths into the sea, where it resembles a high steep wall: it is of a brownish colour, and nearly even with the surface of the water; and though its texture is rather porous, it is capable of withstanding the washing of the surf which constantly breaks upon it.

Though the landing of our gentlemen was the means of enriching the narrative of the voyage with the preceding particulars, the principal object in view was partly unattained; for we scarce procured any thing worth mentioning from the island.

It has been already mentioned, that Omai was sent upon this expedition as Mr. Gore's interpreter; which, perhaps, was not the only service he performed this day. He was questioned by the natives concerning us, our country, our ships, and arms; in answer to which, he told them, among many other particulars, that our country  
had

had ships as large as their island, on board of which were implements of war (describing our guns) of such dimensions, as to contain several people within them; one of which could demolish the island at one shot. As for the guns in our two ships, he acknowledged they were but small in comparison with the former; yet even with these, he said, we could with great ease, at a considerable distance, destroy the island, and every soul in it. On their enquiring by what means this could be done, Omai produced some cartridges from his pocket, and having submitted to inspection the balls, and the gunpowder by which they were to be set in motion, he disposed the latter upon the ground, and, by means of a piece of lighted wood, set it on fire. The sudden blast, the mingled flame and smoke, that instantaneously succeeded, filled the natives with such astonishment, that they no longer doubted the formidable power of our weapons. Had it not been for the terrible ideas they entertained of the guns of our ships, from this specimen of their mode of operation, it was imagined that they would have detained the gentlemen the whole night; for Omai assured them, that, if he and his friends did not return on board the same day, they might expect that the Commodore would fire upon the island.

Though this island had never before been visited by Europeans, there were other strangers

now

now residing in it; and it was entirely owing to Omai's accompanying Mr. Gore, that this remarkable circumstance came to our knowledge. He had scarcely landed on the beach, when he found, among the crowd, three of his own countrymen, natives of the Society Isles. At the distance of about two hundred leagues from those islands, an immense ocean intervening, with such miserable sea-boats as their inhabitants make use of, such a meeting, at such a place, so accidentally visited by us, may be considered as one of those extraordinary and unexpected situations, which strike a curious observer with wonder and amazement. The mutual surprize and pleasure with which Omai and his countrymen engaged in conversation, may easily be imagined. Their story, as related by themselves, is a very affecting one. About twenty persons, male and female, had embarked in a canoe at Otaheite, with an intention of crossing over to Ulietea; but they were prevented by contrary winds from reaching the latter, or returning to the former island. Their stock of provisions being soon exhausted, they suffered inconceivable hardships. They passed many days without sustenance, in consequence of which their number gradually diminished, worn out by famine and fatigue. Only four men survived, when their canoe was overset. The destruction of this small remnant now seemed inevitable; however, they continued hanging  
by

by the side of the vessel, during some of the last days, till they providentially came in sight of the inhabitants of this island, who sent out canoes, and brought them on shore. One of these four had since died. The other three were so well satisfied with the generous treatment they met with here, that they refused the offer made them by our gentlemen, at the request of Omai, of taking them on board our ships, and restoring them to their native islands. They had arrived upon this coast at least twelve years ago. Their names were Tavee, Otirreroa, and Orououte: the former was born at Huaheine, the second at Ulietea, and the latter at Otaheite. The application of the preceding narrative is obvious. It will serve to explain, in a more satisfactory manner than the flimsy conjectures of some speculative reasoners, how the detached parts of the world, and, in particular, the islands of the Pacific Ocean, may have been first peopled; those especially which lie at a considerable distance from each other, or from any inhabited continent.

The natives of this island call it by the name of Wateoo. It is situated in the longitude of  $201^{\circ} 45'$  east, and in the latitude of  $20^{\circ} 1'$  south; and is about six leagues in circuit. It is a beautiful spot, with a surface covered with verdure, and composed of hills and plains. The soil, in some parts, is light and sandy: but, further up the country, we saw from the ship, by the assist-

ance

ance of our glassess, a reddish cast on the rising grounds. There the islanders build their houses, for we could perceive several of them, which were long and spacious. Its produce is nearly the same with that of Mangeea Nooe Nainaiwa, the island we had last quitted.

If we may depend on Omai's report of what he learned from his three countrymen in the course of conversation, the manners of the people of Wateoo, their general habits of life, and their method of treating strangers, greatly resemble those that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands. There is also a great similarity between their religious opinions and ceremonies. From every circumstance, indeed, it may be considered as indubitable, that the inhabitants of Wateoo derive their descent from the same stock, which has so remarkably diffused itself over the immense extent of the Southern Ocean. Omai assured us, that they dignified their island with the pompous appellation of *Wenooa no te Eatooa*, implying a *land of Gods*; esteeming themselves a kind of divinities, possessed with the spirit of the *Eatooa*. Their language was equally well understood by Omai, and by our two New-Zealanders who were on board: its peculiarities, when compared with the other dialects, we cannot point out; for the memorandum-book, in which Mr. Anderson had put down a specimen of it, was stolen by the natives.

C H A P.

## C H A P. III.

*Otakootaia visited—Description of the Island, and its Produce—Birds—Fish—Visit Hervey's Island—Discover it to be inhabited—The Inhabitants refuse to come on board—Their Propensity to Theft—Their Manners, Persons, Dress, Canoes, &c.—Make a fruitless Attempt to land—Bear away for the Friendly Islands—Two Islets of Palmerston's Island touched at—Description of the Islets, their Produce, &c.—Refreshments procured there—Proceed to the Friendly Islands.*

CALMS and light airs having alternately prevailed all the night of the 3d of April, before day-break the easterly swell had carried the ships some distance from *Wateoo*; but having failed of procuring, at that place, some effectual supply, there appeared no reason for our continuing there any longer; we therefore willingly quitted it, and steered for the island which we had discovered three days before.

We got up with it about ten o'clock in the morning, when Captain Cook immediately dispatched Mr. Gore with two boats, to see if he could land, and get subsistence for our cattle. Though a reef surrounded the land here, as at *Wateoo*, and a considerable surf broke against the rocks, our boats no sooner reached the west-side  
of

of the island, but they ventured in, and Mr. Gore and his attendants arrived safe on shore. Captain Cook seeing they had so far succeeded, sent a small boat to know if farther assistance was required. She waited to take in a lading of the produce of the island, and did not return till three o'clock in the afternoon: being cleared, she was sent again for another cargo; the jolly-boat was also dispatched upon the same business, with orders for Mr. Gore to return with the boats before night, which orders were punctually observed.

The supply obtained here was about two hundred cocoa-nuts for ourselves, and for our cattle some grass, and a quantity of the leaves and branches of young cocoa-trees, and the pandanus.

This island lies about three or four leagues from *Watecoo*, the inhabitants of which call it *Otakootaia*. It is in the latitude of  $19^{\circ} 15'$  south, and the longitude of  $201^{\circ} 37'$  east, and is supposed not to exceed three miles in circuit.

This island is entirely destitute of water. Cocoa-palms were the only common trees found there, of which there were several clusters, and great quantities of the *wharra*, or *pandanus*. There were also the *callophyllum*, *suriana*, with a few other shrubs; also a sort of *bind-weed*, *treacle-mustard*, a species of *spurge*, and the *morinda citrifolia*; the fruit of which is sometimes eaten by the natives of Otaheite. Omai, who landed with  
the

the party, dressed some of it for their dinner, but they thought it very indifferent.

A beautiful cuckoo, of a chestnut brown, variegated with black, was the only bird seen amongst the trees; but, upon the shore, were a small sort of curlew, blue and white herons, some egg-birds, and great numbers of noddies.

One of the company caught a lizard running up a tree; though small, it had a most forbidding aspect. Many of another sort were also seen. Infinite numbers of a kind of moth, elegantly speckled with black, white and red, frequented the bushes towards the sea. Some other sorts of moths and pretty butterflies were seen.

At this time there were no fixed inhabitants upon the island; but we discovered a few empty huts, which convinced us of its being, at least, occasionally visited. Monuments, consisting of several large stones, were also erected under the shade of some trees: there were also some smaller ones, with which several places were inclosed, where we supposed their dead had been buried. We found in one place a great many cockle-shells, of a particular sort, finely grooved, and larger than the fist; from which it was conjectured, that the island had been visited by persons who sometimes feed on shell-fish. Mr. Gore left some nails and a hatchet in one of the huts, for the use of those who might visit the island in future,

The

The boats being hoisted in, we made sail again to the northward, resolving to try our fortune at Hervey's Island, which was discovered by Captain Cook in 1773, during his last voyage. We got sight of it about day-break in the morning of the 6th, at the distance of about three leagues. We approached it about eight o'clock, and observed several canoes coming from the shore towards the ships. We were rather surprized at this circumstance, as no traces or signs of inhabitants were seen when the island was first discovered: this, indeed, might be owing to a brisk wind that then blew, and prevented their canoes venturing out.

Advancing still towards the island, six or seven double canoes immediately came near us, with from three to six men in each of them. At the distance of about a stone's throw from the ship they stopped, and it was with difficulty that Omai prevailed on them to come along-side; but they could not be induced to trust themselves on board. Indeed, their disorderly behaviour did not indicate a disposition to trust us, or to treat us well. They attempted to steal some oars out of the Discovery's boat, and struck a man for endeavouring to prevent them. They also cut away a net containing meat, which hung over the stern of that ship, and at first would not restore it, though they afterwards permitted us to purchase it from them. Those who were about the Resolution, behaved equally disorderly and daring; for, with a sort of hooks  
made

made of a long stick, they openly endeavoured to rob us of several things, and actually got a frock belonging to one of our people. It appeared that they had a knowledge of bartering, for they exchanged some fish for some of our small nails, of which they were extravagantly fond, and called them *goore*. Pieces of paper, or any other trifling article that was thrown to them, they caught with the greatest avidity; and if what was thrown fell into the sea, they immediately plunged in to swim after it.

Though the distance between Hervey's Island and Wateoo is not very great, the inhabitants differ greatly from each other, both in person and disposition. The colour of the natives of Hervey's Island is of a deeper cast, and several of them had a fierce savage aspect, like the natives of New-Zealand, though some were fairer. Their hair was long and black, either hanging loose about their shoulders, or tied in a bunch on the top of the head. Some few, indeed, had it cropped short, and, in two or three of them, it was of a red or brownish colour. Their clothing was a narrow piece of mat, bound several times round the lower part of the body, and passing between the thighs. We saw a fine cap of red feathers lying in one of the canoes, and some amongst them were ornamented with the shell of a pearl-oyster, polished, and hung about the neck.

The mode of ornament, so prevalent among the natives of this ocean, of puncturing or tatooing their bodies, not one of them had adopted; but though they were singular in this respect, their being of the same common race is not to be doubted. Their language more resembled the dialect of Otaheite, than that of Mangeea or Watecoo. Like the natives of those islands, they enquired from whence we came, whither bound, the ship's name, the name of our chief, and the number of men on board. Such questions as we proposed to them, they very readily answered. They informed us, among other things, that they had before seen two large ships, like ours, but had not spoken to them as they passed. These were, doubtless, the Resolution and Adventure. They acquainted us that the name of their island was Terouggemou Atooa; and that they were subject to Teerevatooeah, King of Watecoo.

Their food, they said, consisted of cocoa-nuts, fish, and turtle; being destitute of dogs and hogs, and the island not producing bread-fruit or plantains. Their canoes (near thirty of which appeared one time in sight) are tolerably large, and well built, and bear some resemblance to those of Watecoo.

We drew near the north-west part of the island about one o'clock. This seemed to be the only part where we could expect to find anchorage, or a landing-place for our boats. Captain Cook  
imme-

immediately dispatched Lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to sound and reconnoitre the coast. The boats were no sooner hoisted out, than our new visiters suspended their traffic with us, pushing for shore as fast as possible, and came no more near us.

The boats returned at three o'clock, and Mr. King informed Captain Cook, that he could find no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could advance no farther than the outer edge of the reef, which was almost a quarter of a mile from the dry land. That a number of the natives came upon the reef, armed with clubs and long pikes, meaning, as he supposed, to oppose his landing; though, at the same time, they threw cocoa-nuts to our people, and requested them to come on shore; and, notwithstanding this seeming friendly treatment, the women were very active in bringing down a fresh supply of darts and spears.

Captain Cook considered that, as we could not bring the ships to anchor, the attempt to procure grass here would be attended with delay and danger. Being thus disappointed in all the islands after our leaving New-Zealand, and having, from variety of circumstances, been unavoidably retarded in our progress, it was in vain to think of doing any thing this year in the high latitudes of the northern hemisphere, from which we were then so far distant, though it was then the season

for our operations there. Thus situated, it was necessary to pursue such measures as appeared best calculated to preserve our cattle, and save the stores and provisions of the ships; the better to enable us to prosecute our northern discoveries, which could not now commence till a year later than was intended.

If we could fortunately have procured a supply of water and grass, at any of the islands we had lately visited, Captain Cook intended to have stood back to the south, till he had got a westerly wind. But, without such a supply, the certain consequence of doing this, would have been the loss of the cattle, before it was possible for us to reach Otaheite, without gaining a single point of advantage respecting the grand object of our voyage.

The Captain, therefore, determined to bear away for the Friendly Islands, where he knew he could be well supplied with every thing he wanted: and, it being necessary to run night and day, he ordered Captain Clerke to keep a league a-head of the Resolution; because his ship could best claw off the land, which we might possibly fall in with, in our passage.

We steered west by south, with a fine breeze. Captain Cook proposed to proceed first to Middleburgh, or Eooa, thinking we might, perhaps, have provision enough for the cattle, to last till we should arrive at that island. But the next day,  
about

about noon, those faint breezes that had so long retarded us, again returned; and we found it necessary to get into the latitude of Palmerston's and Savage Islands, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774; that, in case of necessity, recourse might be had to them.

In order to save our water, Captain Cook ordered the still to be kept at work a whole day; during which time we procured about fifteen gallons of fresh water.

These light breezes continued till Thursday the 10th, when the wind blew some hours fresh from the north, and north north-west. In the afternoon we had some very heavy rain, attended with thunder squalls. We collected as much rain-water as filled five of our puncheons. When these squalls had blown over, the wind was very unsettled, both in strength and in position, till the next day at noon, when it fixed at north-west, and north north-west, and blew a fresh breeze.

We were thus persecuted with the wind in our teeth, and had the additional mortification to find those very winds here, which we had reason to expect farther south. At day-break, however, on the 13th, we perceived Palmerston's Island, bearing west by south, at the distance of about five leagues; but did not get up with it till the next morning, at eight. Captain Cook then dispatched three boats from the Resolution, and one from the Discovery, with a proper officer in each,

to search for a convenient landing-place; we being now under an absolute necessity of procuring here some provender for our cattle, or we must certainly have lost them.

What is called Palmerston's Island, consists of a group of small islets, about nine or ten in number, connected together by a reef of coral rocks, and lying in circular direction. The boats first examined the most south-easterly islet; and, not succeeding there, ran down to the second, where they immediately landed. Captain Cook then bore down with the ships, till we were a-breast of the place, where we kept standing off and on, there being no bottom to be found to anchor upon. This, however, was of no material consequence, as there were no human beings upon the island, except the party who had landed from our boats.

At one o'clock one of the boats returned, laden with scurvy-grass and young cocoa-trees, which was, at this time, a most excellent repast for our animals on board. A message was also brought from Mr. Gore, who commanded the party upon this expedition, acquainting us that the island abounded with such produce, and also with the wharra-tree and cocoa-nuts. In consequence of this information, Captain Cook resolved to get a sufficient supply of these articles before he quitted this station, and accordingly went ashore in a small boat, accompanied by the  
Captain

Captain of the Discovery. The island does not exceed a mile in circumference, and is not elevated above three feet beyond the level of the sea. It consisted almost entirely of a coral sand, with a small mixture of blackish mould, which appeared to be produced from rotten vegetables.

This poor soil is, however, covered with the same kinds of shrubs and bushes as we had seen at Otakootaia or Wenoa-ette, though not in so great variety. We perceived a great number of man of war birds, tropic birds, and two sorts of boobies, which were then laying their eggs, and so exceedingly tame as to permit us to take them off their nests, which consist only of a few sticks loosely put together. These tropic birds differ essentially from the common sort, being of a beautiful white, slightly tinged with red, and having two long tail-feathers of a deepish crimson. Our people killed a considerable number of each sort, which, though not the most delicate kind of food, were highly acceptable to us, who had been a long time confined to a salt diet. We saw plenty of red crabs creeping about among the trees; and caught several fish, which, when the sea retreated, had been left in holes upon the reef.

At one part of the reef, which bounds the lake within, almost even with the surface, there was a large bed of coral, which afforded a most enchanting prospect. Its base, which was fixed to

the shore, extended so far that it could not be seen, so that it appeared to be suspended in the water. The sea was then unruffled, and the refulgence of the sun exposed the various sorts of coral, in the most beautiful order; some parts luxuriantly branching into the water; others appearing in vast variety of figures; and the whole greatly heightened by spangles of the richest colours, glowing from a number of large clams, interspersed in every part. Even this delightful scene was greatly improved by the multitude of fishes, that gently glided along, seemingly with the most perfect security. Their colours were the most beautiful that can be imagined; blue, yellow, black, red, &c. far excelling any thing that can be produced by art. The richness of this submarine grotto was greatly increased by their various forms; and the whole could not possibly be surveyed without a pleasing transport, accompanied, at the same time, with regret, that a work so astonishingly elegant should be concealed in a place so seldom explored by the human eye.

Except a piece of a canoe that was found upon the beach, no traces were discoverable of inhabitants having ever been here; and probably that may have been drifted from some other island. We were surprised, however, at perceiving some small brown rats on this little island; a circumstance, perhaps, not easily accounted for, unless

we

we admit the possibility of their being imported in the canoe, of which we saw the remains.

The boats being laden, Captain Cook returned on board, leaving Mr. Gore and his party to pass the night on shore, to be ready for business early the next morning.

The 15th, like the preceding day, was spent in collecting subsistence for the cattle, consisting principally of tender branches of the wharra-tree, palm-cabbage, and young cocoa-nut trees. A sufficient supply of these having been procured by sun-set, Captain Cook ordered all the people on board: but, having very little wind, he determined to employ the next day, by endeavouring, from the next island to leeward, to get some cocoa-nuts for our people: for this purpose, we kept standing off and on all night; and, about nine o'clock in the morning, we went to the west-side of the islands, and landed, from our boats, with little difficulty. The people immediately employed themselves in gathering cocoa-nuts, which we found in the greatest plenty; but it was a tedious operation to convey them to our boats, being obliged to carry them half a mile over the reef, up to the middle in water. Omai, who accompanied us, presently caught, with a scoop-net, as many fish as supplied the party on shore for dinner, besides sending a quantity to each ship. Men of war, and tropic-birds, were found here in abundance; so that we fared most sumptuously.

In

In these excursions to the uninhabited islands, Omai was of the greatest service to us. He caught the fish, and dressed them, as well as the birds we killed, after the fashion of his country, with a dexterity and cheerfulness that did him honour. Before night, the boats made two trips, and were each time heavy laden: with the last, Captain Cook returned on board, leaving his Third Lieutenant, Mr. Williamson, with a party, to prepare another lading for the boats against the next morning.

Accordingly, Capt. Cook dispatched them about seven o'clock, and, by noon, they returned laden. No delay was made in sending them back for another cargo, with orders for all to be on board by sun-set. These orders being punctually obeyed, we hoisted in the boats, and sailed to the westward, with a light air from the north.

The islet we last came from is somewhat larger than the other, and almost covered with cocoa-palms. The other productions were the same as at the first islet. On the beach were found two pieces of board, one of which was rudely carved, and an elliptical paddle. These were, perhaps, a part of the same canoe, the remains of which we had seen on the other beach, the two islets being within half a mile of each other. There were not so many crabs here as at the last place, but we found some scorpions and other insects, and a much greater number of fish upon the reefs.

Among

Among the rest were some beautiful large spotted eels, which would raise themselves out of the water, and endeavour to bite their pursuers. There were also snappers, parrot-fish, and a brown spotted rock-fish, not larger than a haddock, so tame, that it would remain fixed, and gaze at us. If we had been really in want, a sufficient supply might easily have been had, for thousands of the clams stuck upon the reef, many of which weighed two or three pounds. There were also some other sorts of shell-fish; and, when the tide flowed, several sharks came with it, some of which were killed by our people; but their presence rendered it, at that time, unsafe to walk in the water.

Mr. Williamson and his party, who were left on shore, were much pestered in the night with musquitoes. Some of them shot two curlews, and saw some plovers upon the shore; one or two cuckoos, like those at Wenoa-ette, were also seen.

The islets comprehended under the name of Palmerston's Island, may be said to be the summits of a reef of coral-rock, covered only with a thin coat of sand; though clothed with trees and plants, like the low grounds of the high islands of this ocean.

Having left Palmerston's Island, we steered west, in order to proceed to Annamooka. We had variable winds, with squalls, some thunder, and much rain. The showers being very copious, we saved a considerable quantity of water; and,

— as

as we could procure a greater supply in one hour, by the rain, than by distillation in a month, we laid the still aside, as being attended with more trouble than advantage.

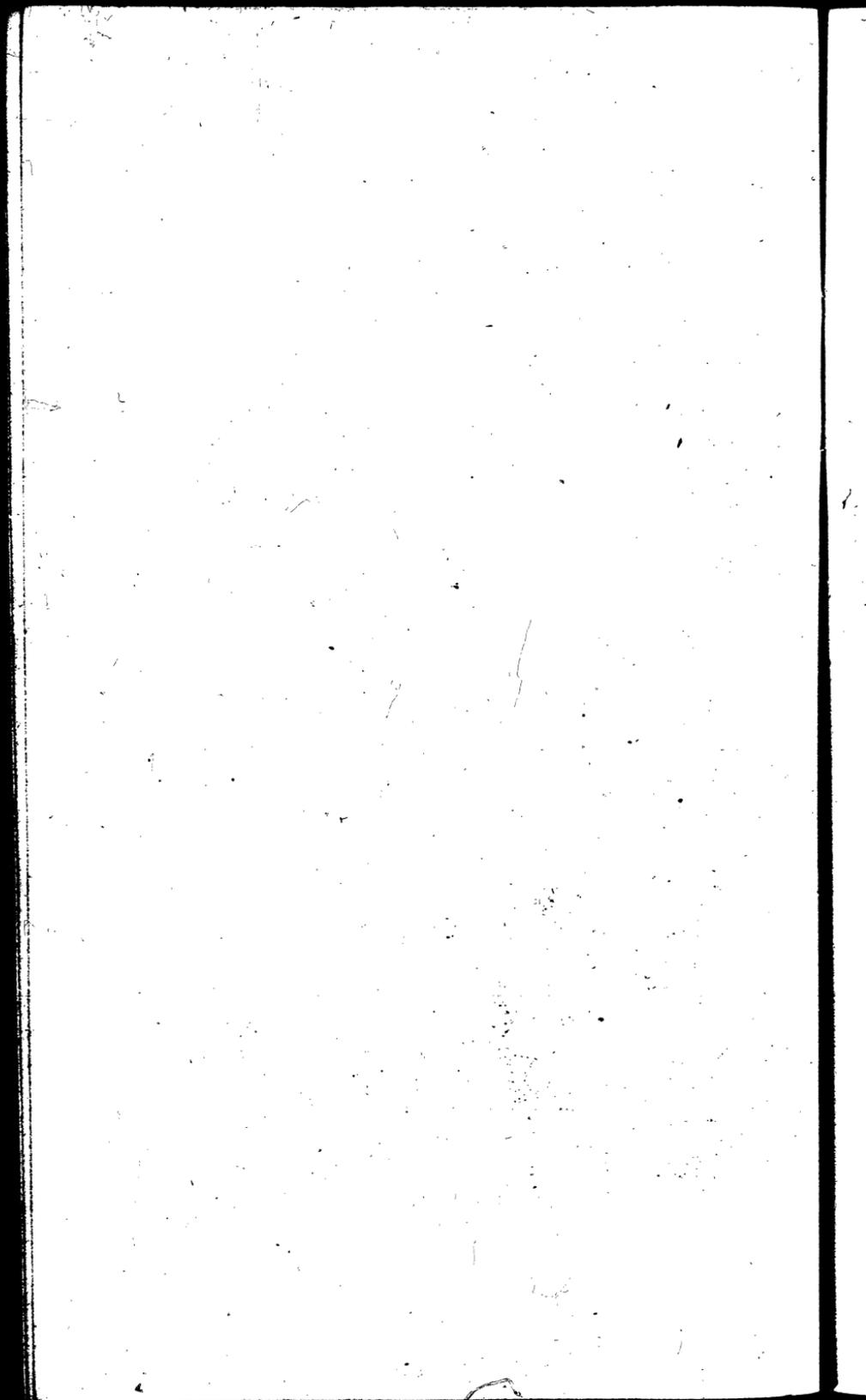
The heat, which had continued in the extreme for about a month, became much more disagreeable in this close rainy weather, and we apprehended it would soon be noxious. It is, however, remarkable, that there was not then a single person sick on board either of the ships.

We passed Savage Island, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774, in the night between the 24th and 25th; and, on the 28th, about ten o'clock in the morning, we saw the islands to the eastward of Annamooka, bearing north by west about five leagues distant. We steered to the south, and then hauled up for Annamooka. At the approach of night, the weather being squally, with rain, we anchored in fifteen fathoms water.

*Coconut Grove, Hawaii*



*Illustration of a Coconut Grove, Hawaii*



## C H A P. IV.

*Barter with the Natives of Komango and other Islands, for Provisions, &c.—Arrival at Annamooka—Variety of Transactions there—A Visit received from Feenou, a principal Chief from Tongataboo—His Reception in the Island—Dines frequently on board the Resolution—Several Instances of the pilfering Disposition of the Natives—Punishments inflicted on them—Account of Annamooka—Proceed to Hapae.*

WE had not long anchored, when two canoes paddled towards us, and came alongside without delay or hesitation: there were four men in one of the canoes, and three in the other. They brought with them some sugar-cane, bread-fruit, plantains, and cocoa-nuts, which they bartered with us for nails. After these canoes had left us, we were visited by another; but as night was approaching, he did not long continue with us. The island nearest to us was Komango, which was five miles distant; this shews how these people disregard trouble or danger, to get possession of a few of our most trifling articles.

At four o'clock the next morning, Captain Cook dispatched Lieutenant King, with two boats, to Komango, in order to procure refreshments;

and at five, made the signal to weigh, to proceed to Annamooka.

As soon as day-light appeared, we were visited by six or seven canoes, bringing with them two pigs, some fowls, several large wood-pigeons, small rails, and some violet-coloured coots, besides fruits and roots of various kinds; which they exchanged with us for nails, hatchets, beads, &c. They had other articles of commerce, but Captain Cook gave particular orders that no curiosities should be purchased, till the ships were supplied with provisions, and till they had obtained permission from him.

About noon, Mr. King's boat returned with seven hogs, some fowls, a quantity of fruit and roots; and also some grass for our animals. His party was treated with great civility at Komango. The inhabitants did not appear to be numerous; and their huts, which almost joined to each other, were but indifferent. Tooboulangee, the chief of the island, and another, named Taipa, came on board with Mr. King. They brought a hog, as a present to Captain Cook, and promised to bring some more the next day.

The boats being a-board, we stood for Annamooka; and, having little wind, we intended to go between Annamooka-ette\*, and the breakers at the south-east; but, on drawing near, we met

\* Little Annamooka.

with very irregular soundings, which obliged us to relinquish the design, and go to the southward. This carried us to leeward, and we found it necessary to spend the night under sail. It was dark and rainy, and we had the wind from every direction. The next morning, at day-light, we were farther off than we had been the preceding evening; and the wind was now right in our teeth.

We continued to ply, to very little purpose, the whole day; and, in the evening, anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water; the west point of Annamooka bearing east north-east, four miles distant. Tooboulangee and Taipa, agreeable to their promise, brought off some hogs for Captain Cook: we obtained others, by bartering, from the different canoes that followed us, and a large quantity of fruit. It is remarkable, that those who visited us from the islands, on that day, would hardly part with any of their commodities to any one but Captain Cook.

At four the next morning, Captain Cook ordered a boat to be hoisted out, and the master to sound the south-west side of Annamooka. When he returned, he reported, that he had sounded between Great and Little Annamooka, where he found ten and twelve fathoms depth of water; that the place was very well sheltered from winds; but that no fresh water was to be had but at a considerable distance inland, and that, even there,  
it

it was neither plentiful nor good. For this very sufficient reason, Captain Cook resolved to anchor on the north-side of the island, where, in his last voyage, he had found a convenient place for watering and landing.

Though not above a league distant, we did not reach it till about five o'clock in the afternoon, being retarded by the quantity of canoes that crowded round the ships, laden with abundant supplies of the produce of their island. Several of these canoes, which were double, had a large sail, and carried between forty and fifty men each. Several women too appeared in the canoes, incited, perhaps, by curiosity to visit us; though they were as earnest in bartering as the men, and used the paddle with equal skill and dexterity. We came to an anchor in eighteen fathoms water, the island extending from east to south-west, about three quarters of a mile distant. Thus Captain Cook resumed the station, which he had occupied when he visited Annamooka three years before; and probably where Tasman, who first discovered this island, anchored in 1643.

The next day, during the preparations for watering, Captain Cook went ashore, in the forenoon, accompanied by Captain Clerke, and others, to fix on a place for setting up the observatories, the natives having readily granted us permission. They shewed us every mark of civility,

tility, and accommodated us with a boat-house, which answered the purpose of a tent. Toobou, the chief of the island, conducted Captain Cook and Omai to his house, situated on a pleasant spot, in the centre of his plantation. It was surrounded with a grass-plot, which he said was for the purpose of cleansing their feet, before they entered his habitation. Such an attention to cleanliness we had never observed before, wherever we had visited in this ocean; though we afterwards found it to be very common at the Friendly Islands. No carpet in an English drawing-room could be kept neater, than the mats which covered the floor of Toobou's house.

While we were on shore, we bartered for some hogs and fruit; and, when we arrived on board, the ships were crowded with the natives. As very few of them came empty-handed, we were speedily supplied with every refreshment.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook landed again, with a party of marines; and such of the cattle as were in a weakly state, were sent on shore with him. Having settled every thing to his satisfaction, he returned to the ship in the evening, leaving Mr. King in command upon the island. Taipa was now become our trusty friend, and, in order to be near our party, had a house carried a quarter of a mile, on men's shoulders, and placed by the side of the shed which our party occupied.

Our various operations on shore began the next day. Some were busied in making hay, others in filling our water-casks, and a third party in cutting wood. On the same day, Messrs. King and Bailey began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to get the rate of our time-keepers. In the evening, Taipa harangued the natives for some time; but we could only guess at the subject, and supposed he was instructing them how to treat us, and advising them to bring the produce of the island to market. His eloquence had the desired effect, and occasioned us to receive a plentiful supply of provisions the next day.

On the 4th of May, the Discovery lost her small bower anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks.

We were visited on the 6th, by a chief from Tongataboo, whose name was Feenou: he was introduced by Taipa, as king of all the Friendly Isles. Captain Cook was now informed, that, on our arrival, a canoe had been immediately dispatched to Tongataboo with the news; which occasioned his coming to Annamooka. We were informed, by the officer on shore, that, on his arrival, all the natives were ordered out to meet him, who saluted him by bowing their heads as low as his feet, the soles of which they touched with the palm of each hand, and afterwards with the back part. A personage received with such  
extra-

extraordinary marks of respect, could not be supposed to be any less than a king.

Captain Cook, in the afternoon, went to pay a visit to this great man, having first received from him a present of two fish, brought on board by one of his attendants. As soon as the Captain landed, Feenou came up to him. He was tall and thin, and appeared to be about thirty years of age: his features were more of the European cast than any we had seen here. After the first salutation, Captain Cook requested to know if he was king; as he entertained some doubts on that score, perceiving that he was not the man whom he remembered to have seen in that character during his former voyage. Taipa eagerly answered for him, and mentioned no less than one hundred and fifty-three islands, of which he was the sovereign. Soon after, our grand visiter, attended by five or six servants, accompanied us on board. Captain Cook made them suitable presents, and entertained them in a manner which he thought would be most agreeable to them.

Towards the evening, the Captain attended them on shore in his boat, into which, by order of the chief, three hogs were conveyed, as a return for the presents he had received. We were then informed of an accident, the relation of which will convey some idea of the extent of the authority exercised here over the inferior people.

While Feenou was on board the Resolution, an inferior chief ordered all the natives to retire from the post we occupied. Some of them, however, having ventured to return, he beat them most unmercifully, with a large stick. One, in particular, received so violent a blow on the side of the face, that the blood gushed from his mouth and nostrils; and, after lying motionless for some time, he was removed from the place in convulsions. The person who gave the blow, on being told that he certainly had killed the man, only laughed at the circumstance; and, indeed, it was very evident that he did not grieve for what had happened. We had afterwards the satisfaction of hearing, that the poor sufferer was out of danger.

On the 7th, the Discovery having found her small bower anchor, shifted her birth; but not till after her best bower cable had met with the fate of the other. This day, Feenou dined with Captain Cook; and also on the next, when he was attended by Taipa, Toobou, and some other chiefs. None but Taipa, however, was permitted to sit at table with Feenou, or even to eat in his presence. The Captain was highly pleased on account of this etiquette; for before the arrival of Feenou, he had generally a larger company than he chose, his table being overflowed with visitors of both sexes. For though, at Otaheite, the females are denied the privilege of eating

ing

ing in company with the men, this is not the practice at the Friendly Islands.

A large junk axe having been stolen out of the ship by one of the natives, on the first day of our arrival at Annamooka, application was made to Feenou to exert his authority to get it restored; who gave orders for that purpose, which exacted such implicit obedience, that it was brought on board before we had finished our dinner. We had, indeed, many opportunities of remarking, how expert these people were in thievery. Even some of their chiefs were not ashamed of acting in that profession. On the 9th of May, one of them was detected carrying out of the ship, the bolt belonging to the spun-yarn winch, which he had carefully concealed under his clothes. For this offence Captain Cook sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and to be confined till he paid a hog for his liberty. Though, after this circumstance, we were troubled with no more thieves of rank, their servants or slaves were constantly employed in this dirty business; and they received a flogging with as much seeming indifference, as if it had been upon the main-mast. When any of them were caught in the act of thieving, instead of interceding in their behalf, their masters would often advise us to kill them. This being a punishment we were not fond of inflicting, they usually escaped without any kind of punishment: they were alike insen-

sible of the shame and torture of corporal chastisement. At length, however, Captain Clerke contrived a mode of treatment, which we supposed had some effect. Immediately upon detection, he ordered their heads to be completely shaved, and thus pointed them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen, and put our people upon their guard, to deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their thefts.

Feenou was so fond of our company, that he dined on board every day, though he did not always partake of our fare. On the 10th, his servants brought him a mess, which had been dressed on shore, consisting of fish, soup, and yams; cocoa-nut liquor had been used instead of water, in which the fish had been boiled or stewed (perhaps in a wooden vessel with hot stones) and it was carried on board on a plantain leaf. Captain Cook tasted of the mess, and was so well pleased with it, that he afterwards ordered some fish to be dressed in the same way; but, though his cook succeeded tolerably well, it was much inferior to the dish he attempted to imitate.

Having, in a great measure, exhausted the island of almost every article of food, on Sunday the 11th of May, we removed, from the shore, the observatories, horses, and other things that we had landed; intending to sail as soon as the Discovery should have found her best bower anchor. Feenou, hearing that the Captain meant to  
proceed

proceed to Tongataboo, earnestly entreated him to alter his plan; expressing as much aversion to it, as if, by diverting him from it, he wished to promote some particular interest of his own. He warmly recommended a group of islands, called Hapae, lying to the north-east; where, he assured us, we could be easily and plentifully supplied with every refreshment; and even offered to attend us thither in person. In consequence of his advice, Hapae was made choice of; and, as it had not been visited by any European ships, the surveying it became an object to Captain Cook.

On Tuesday the 13th, Captain Clerke's anchor was happily recovered; and, on the morning of the 14th, we got under sail, and left An-namooka.

Though this island is somewhat higher than the other small isles that surround it, yet it is lower than Mangeea and Wateoo; and even those are but of a moderate height. The shore, where our ships lay, consists of a steep, rugged, coral rock, about nine or ten feet high, except two sandy beaches, which are defended from the sea, by a reef of the same sort of rock. In the centre of the island there is a salt-water lake, about a mile and an half in breadth, round which the ground rises with a gradual ascent, and we could not trace its having any communication with the sea. On the rising parts of the  
L 4 island,

island, and especially towards the sea; the soil is either of a blackish loose mould, or a reddish clay; but there is not a stream of fresh water to be found in any part of the island.

The land here is well cultivated, except in a few places; and, though some parts appear to lie waste, they are only left to recover the strength exhausted by constant culture; for we often saw the natives at work upon these spots, in order to plant them again. Yams and plantains form their principal plantations; many of which are very extensive, and enclosed with fences of reed about six feet high. Fences of less compass were often seen within these, surrounding the houses of the principal people. The bread-fruit and cocoanut-trees are interspersed without any regular order, but principally near the habitations of the natives. The other parts of the island, especially towards the sea, and round the lake, are covered with luxuriant trees and bushes; among which there are a great many mangroves and fatanootrees. All the rocks and stones about the island are of coral, except in one place, to the right of the sandy beach, where there is a rock of about twenty-five feet in height, of a calcareous stone, and of a yellowish colour; but, even here, some large pieces are to be seen of the same coral rock as that which composes the shore.

We sometimes amused ourselves in walking up the country and shooting wild ducks, resembling  
our

our widgeon, which are very numerous on the salt lake, as well as on the pool where we procured our water. We found, in these excursions, that the inhabitants frequently deserted their houses to repair to the trading-place, without entertaining the least suspicion that strangers would take away or destroy any property that belonged to them. From this circumstance it might be supposed, that most of the natives were sometimes collected on the beach, and that there would be no great difficulty in forming an accurate computation of their number; but the continual resort of visitors, from other islands, rendered it impossible. However, as we never saw more than a thousand persons collected at one time, it may be reasonably supposed, that there are about twice that number upon the island.

In the direct track to Hapae, whither we were now bound, to the north and north-east of Annamooka, a great number of small isles are seen. Amidst the rocks and shoals adjoining to this group, we were doubtful whether there was a free passage for ships of such magnitude as ours; though the natives sailed through the intervals in their canoes: therefore, when we weighed anchor from Annamooka, we steered to go to the westward of the above islands, and north north-west towards Kao, and Toofoa, two islands remarkable for their great height, and the most westerly of those in sight. Feenou, with his attendants,

tendants, remained in the Resolution till about noon, and then entered the large sailing canoe, which had brought him from Tongataboo, and stood in amongst the cluster of islands, of which we were now a-breast.

They are scattered, at unequal distances, and most of them are as high as Annamooka. Some of them are of two or three miles in length, and others only half a mile. Many of them have steep rocky shores, like Annamooka; some have reddish cliffs, and others have sandy beaches, extending almost their whole length. In general, they are entirely clothed with trees, among which are many cocoa-palms, each having the appearance of a beautiful garden placed in the sea. The serene weather we now had, contributed greatly to heighten the scene; and the whole might convey an idea of the realization of some fairy land. It appears, that some of these islands had been formed, as Palmerston's Island was supposed to have been; for one of them is now entirely sand, and another has but a single bush or tree upon it.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, we steered to the north, leaving Toofoa and Kao on our larboard. We intended to have anchored for the night, but it arrived before we could find a place in less than fifty fathoms water; and we rather chose to spend the night under sail, than come to in such a depth.

In

In the afternoon, we had been within two leagues of Toofoa, and observed the smoke of it several times in the day. There is a volcano upon it, of which the Friendly Islanders entertain some superstitious notions, and call it *Kollo-fee*, saying, it is an Otoo, or divinity. We were informed, that it sometimes throws up very large stones, and the *crater* is compared to the size of a small islet, which has not ceased smoking in the memory of the inhabitants; nor have they any tradition that it ever did. We sometimes saw the smoke from the centre of the island, even at Annamooka, the distance of at least ten leagues. We were told that Toofoa was but thinly inhabited, but that the water upon it was excellent.

At day-break, on the 15th, we were not far from Kao, which is a large rock of a conic figure; we steered to the passage between Footooha and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze at south-east. About ten o'clock, Feenou came on board, and continued with us all day. He brought with him a quantity of fruit and two hogs; and, in the course of the day, several canoes came to barter quantities of the former article, which was very acceptable to us, as our stock began to be low. At noon, our latitude was  $19^{\circ} 49' 45''$  south, and we had made seven miles of longitude from Annamooka.

After

After having passed Footooha, we met with a reef of rocks, and, there being but little wind, it was attended with some difficulty to keep clear of them. Having passed this reef, we hauled up for Neeneeva, a small low isle in the direction of east-north-east from Footooha, in hopes of finding an anchorage, but were again disappointed: for, notwithstanding we had land in every direction, the sea was unfathomable. We plainly saw, in the course of this night, flames issuing from the volcano upon Toofoa.

At day-break on the 16th, we steered, with a gentle breeze at south-east, for Hapae, which was now in sight; and perceived it to be low land, from the trees only appearing above the water. At nine o'clock we saw it plainly forming three islands, nearly equal in size; and, soon after, a fourth appeared to the southward of these, as large as any of the others. Each of the islands appeared to be of a similar height and appearance, and about six or seven miles in length. The most northern of them is called Haanno, the next Foa, the third Lefooga, and the fourth Hoolaiva; but they are all four included under the general name of Hapae.

By sun-set, we got up with the northernmost of these isles, where we experienced the same distress for want of anchorage, that we did the two preceding evenings; having another night to spend under sail, with land and breakers in

every direction. Feenou, who had been on board all day, went forward to Hapae in the evening, and took Omai with him in the canoe. He was not unmindful of our disagreeable situation, and kept up a good fire the whole night, by way of a land-mark.

At the return of day-light, on the 17th, being then close in with Foa, we perceived it was joined to Haanno, by a reef running from one island to the other, even with the surface of the sea. Captain Cook dispatched a boat to look for anchorage; and a proper place was found, a-breast of a reef which joins Lefooga to Foa, having twenty-four fathoms depth of water. In this station, the northern point of Hapae bore north,  $16^{\circ}$  east. We were not above three quarters of a mile from the shore; and, as we lay before a creek in the reef, it was convenient landing at all times.

## C H A P. V.

*Arrival at Hapae—Friendly Reception there—Taipa harangues the People—Exhorts them not to steal, &c.—Presents and Solemnities—Entertainment—Single Combats with Clubs—Wrestling—Boxing—Female Boxing—Marines exercised—A Dance by Men—Fire-Works—Night Entertainments, consisting of Singing and Dancing by Men and Women.*

AS soon as we had anchored, we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, and our ships were presently filled with the natives. They brought with them hogs, fowls, fruit, and roots, which they exchanged for cloth, knives, beads, nails, and hatchets. Feenou and Omai having come on board, early in the morning, in order to introduce Captain Cook to the people of the island, he soon accompanied them on shore for that purpose.

The chief conducted the Captain to a hut, situated close to the sea-beach, which was brought thither but a few minutes before for his reception. In this Feenou, Omai, and Captain Cook, were seated. The other chiefs, and the multitude, appeared fronting them on the outside; and they also seated themselves. Captain Cook being asked how long he intended to stay, answered

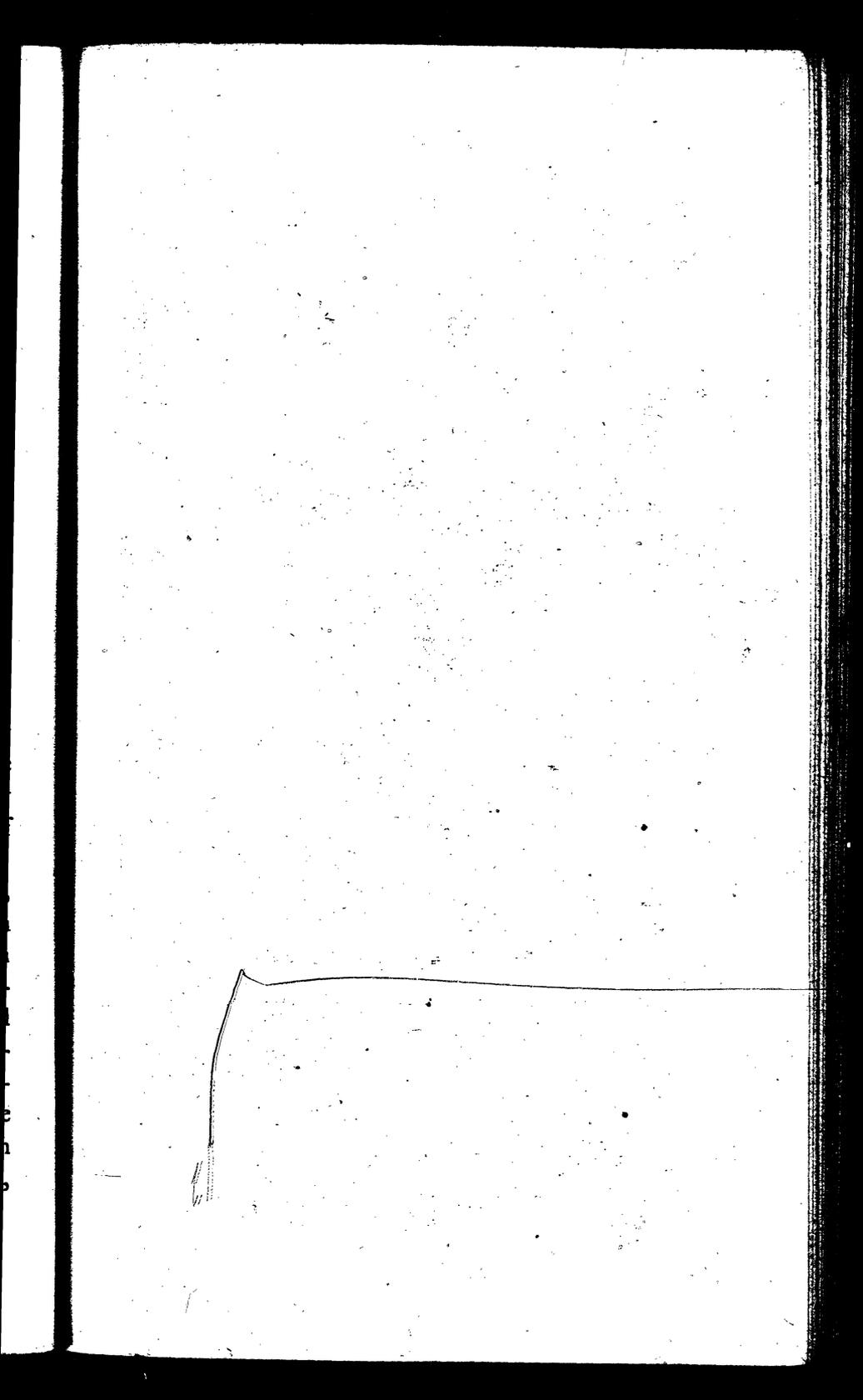
five days. Taipa was, therefore, ordered to sit by him, and declare this to the people. He then harangued them in words nearly to the following purport, as we afterwards were informed by Omai. He exhorted both old and young, to look upon Captain Cook as a friend, who meant to continue with them a few days; and that, during his stay among them, they would not steal any thing from him, or offend him in any other manner. He informed them, that it was expected they should bring hogs, fowls, fruit, &c. to the ships; for which they would receive in exchange, such articles as he enumerated. Soon after Taipa had delivered his address to the assembly, Feenou left them; on which Captain Cook was informed by Taipa, that it was necessary he should make a present to Earoupa, the chief of the island. The Captain being not unprepared for this, gave him such articles as far exceeded his expectation. This liberality created similar demands from two chiefs of other isles who were present, and even from Taipa himself. Soon after he had made the last of these presents, Feenou returned, and expressed his displeasure with Taipa for suffering me to be so lavish of my favours. But this was, doubtless, a finesse, as he certainly acted in concert with the others.

Feenou now resumed his seat, ordering Earoupa to sit by him, and harangue the people as Taipa had

had done, which he did nearly to the same purpose.

These ceremonies over, the chief, at the Captain's request, conducted him to the three stagnant pools of what he called fresh water; in one of which the water was indeed tolerable, and the situation convenient for filling our casks. On his return to his former station, he found a baked hog and some yams, smoking hot, ready to be conveyed on board for his dinner. He invited Feenou and his friends to partake of the repast, and they embarked for the ship, though none but himself sat down with us at table. Dinner being over, the Captain conducted them on shore; and, before he returned, received, as a present from the chief, a fine large turtle, and a quantity of yams. We had a plentiful supply of provisions, for, in the course of the day, we got, by bartering with the natives, about twenty small hogs, together with a large quantity of fruit and roots.

On Sunday the 18th, early in the morning, Feenou and Omai, who now slept on shore with the chief, came on board, to request Captain Cook's presence upon the island. He accompanied them, and, upon landing, was conducted to the place where he had been seated the preceding day, and where he beheld a large concourse of people already assembled. Though he imagined that something extraordinary was in agitation,



*Cook's Voyage, Quarto Edition.*



*Printed by W. Woodcut, in the Strand, London.*

agitation, yet he could not conjecture what, nor could Omai give him any information.

Soon after he was seated, about an hundred of the natives appeared, and advanced, laden with yams, plantains, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and sugar-canes; their burdens were deposited on our left. A number of others arrived soon after, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two piles on the right side. To these were fastened two pigs, and half a dozen fowls; and to those upon the left, six pigs, and two turtles. Earoupa seated himself before the articles on the left side, and another chief before those upon the right; they being, it was supposed, the two chiefs who had procured them by order of Feenou, who was as implicitly obeyed here, as he had been at Annamooka, and who had probably laid this tax upon the chiefs of Hapace for the present occasion.

When this munificent collection of provisions was placed in order, and advantageously disposed, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole. Immediately after, a number of men, armed with clubs, entered this circle, or area; where they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one half of them retired to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Presently after, they successively entertained us with single combats; one champion from one

side challenging those of the other side, partly by words, but more by expressive gestures, to send one of their party to oppose him. The challenge was, in general, accepted; the two combatants placed themselves in proper attitudes, and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken. At the conclusion of each combat, the victor squatted himself down before the chief, then immediately rose up and retired. Some old men, who seemed to preside as judges, gave their plaudit in a very few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side of the conqueror, celebrated the glory he had acquired in two or three loud huzzas.

This entertainment was sometimes suspended for a short space, and the intervals of time were filled up with wrestling and boxing-matches. The first were performed in the method practised at Otaheite, and the second differed very little from the English manner. A couple of stout wenches next stepped forth, and, without ceremony, began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This contest, however, was but of short duration, for, in the space of half a minute, one of them gave it up. The victorious heroine was applauded by the spectators, in the same manner as the successful combatants of the other sex. Though we expressed some disapprobation at this part of the entertainment, it did not hinder two  
other



THE BOXING MATCH AT THE TEMPLE



other females from entering the lists; who seemed to be spirited girls, and, if two old women had not interposed to part them, would probably have given each other a good drubbing. At least three thousand spectators were present when these combats were exhibited, and every thing was conducted with the most perfect good humour on all sides; though some of the champions, of both sexes, received blows which they must have felt the effect of for some time after.

The diversions being finished, the chief informed Captain Cook that the provisions on our right-hand were a present to Omai; and that those on our left (making about two-thirds of the whole quantity) were intended for him, and that he might suit his own convenience in taking them on board.

Four boats were loaded with the munificence of Feenou, whose favours far exceeded any that Captain Cook had ever received from the sovereigns of any of the islands which he had visited in the Pacific Ocean. He, therefore, embraced the first opportunity of convincing Feenou that he was not insensible of his liberality, by bestowing upon him such commodities as he supposed were most valuable in his estimation. Feenou was so highly pleased with the return that was made him, that he left the Captain still indebted to him, by sending him two large hogs, some yams, and a considerable quantity of cloth.

Feenou having expressed a desire to see the marines perform their exercise, Captain Cook ordered them all ashore on the morning of the 20th of May. After they had gone through various evolutions, and fired several vollies, which seemed to give pleasure to our numerous spectators, the chief, in his turn, entertained us with an exhibition, which was performed with an exactness and dexterity, far surpassing what they had seen of our military manœuvres. It was a kind of dance, performed by men, in which one hundred and five persons were engaged; each having an instrument in his hand, resembling a paddle, two feet and an half long, with a thin blade, and a small handle. With these instruments various flourishes were made, each of which was accompanied with a different movement, or a different attitude of the body. At first, the dancers ranged themselves in three lines, and so changed their stations by different evolutions, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. At one part of the performance, they extended themselves in one line; afterwards they formed themselves into a semi-circle; and then into two square columns. During the last movement, one of them came forward, and performed an antic dance before Captain Cook, with which the entertainment ended.

The music that accompanied the dances was produced by two drums, or rather hollow logs of wood,

wood, from which they forced some varied notes by beating on them with two sticks. The dancers, however, did not appear to be much assisted or directed by these sounds; but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined. Their song was rather melodious, and their corresponding motions were so skilfully executed, that the whole body of dancers appeared as one regular machine. Such a performance would have been applauded even on an European theatre. It far exceeded any attempt that we had made to entertain them; inasmuch that they seemed to plume themselves on their superiority over us. They esteemed none of our musical instruments, except the drum, and even thought that inferior to their own. They held our French-horns in the highest contempt, and would not pay the smallest attention to them, either here or at any other of the islands.

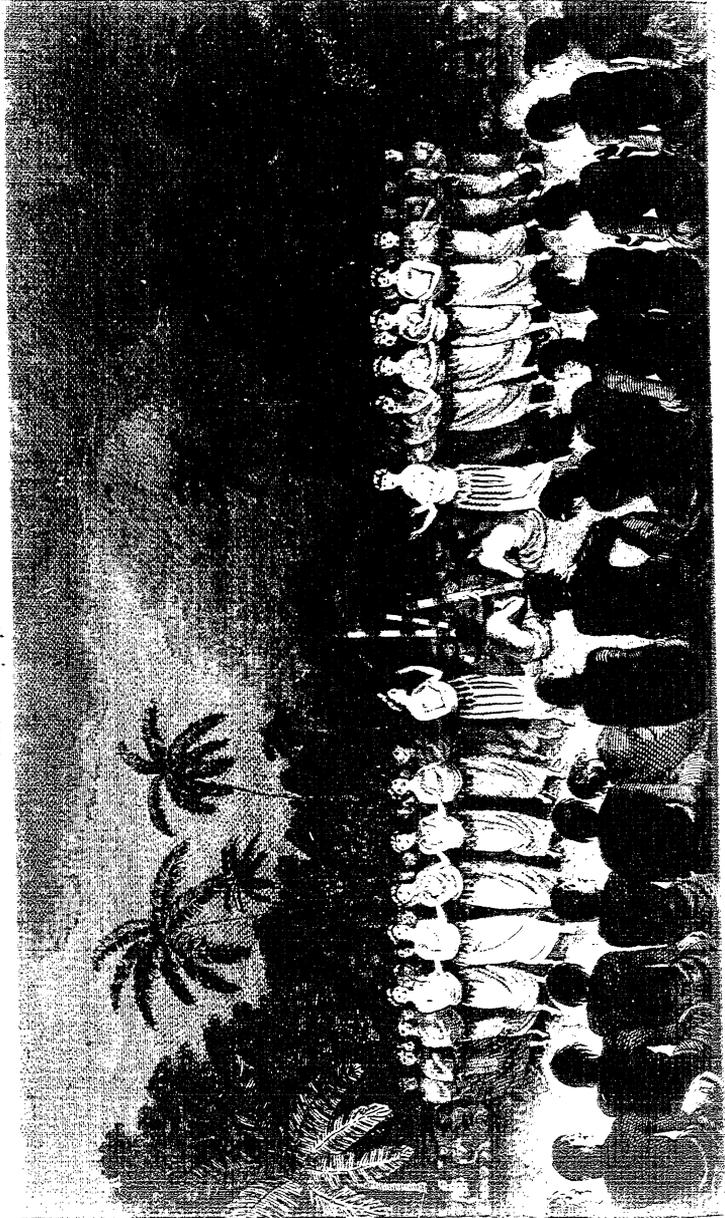
To give them a more favourable opinion of the amusements and superior attainments of the English, Captain Cook ordered some fireworks to be prepared; and, after it was dark, exhibited them in the presence of Feenou, and a vast multitude of people. They were highly entertained with the performance in general; but our water and sky-rockets, in particular, astonished them beyond all conception. They now admitted that the scale was turned in our favour.

This, however, served only as an additional stimulus to urge them to proceed to fresh exertions of their singular dexterity. As soon as our fireworks were ended, a succession of dances, which Feenou had prepared for our entertainment, began. A band of music, or chorus, consisting of eighteen men, seated themselves before us, in the centre of a circle formed by the numerous spectators. About four or five of the performers had each pieces of large bamboo, from three to six feet in length, each played on by one man, who held it almost vertically; the upper end of which was open, but the other closed by one of the joints. They kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, with the close end, and thus produced variety of notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all were of the base or hollow kind; which was counteracted by a person who struck nimbly a piece of the same substance, split, and lying upon the ground; furnishing a tone as acute, as the others were grave and solemn. The whole of the band (including those who performed upon the bamboos) sung a slow soft air, which so finely tempered the harsher notes of the instruments, that the most perfect judge of the modulation of sweet sounds could not avoid confessing the vast power, and pleasing effect, of this simple harmony.

About a quarter of an hour after the concert began, twenty women entered the circle, whose  
heads



*Cook's Voyages, Octavo Edition.*



*J. V. GILLET, D. ESSEX, BY W. P. AGES, IN U. S. A. 1844.*

heads were adorned with garlands of crimson flowers; and many of their persons were decorated with leaves of trees, curiously scolloped, and ornamented at the edges. They encircled those of the chorus, with their faces towards them, and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the chorus; and those were alternately repeated. The women accompanied their song with many graceful motions of their hands, and continually advancing and retreating with one foot, while the other remained fixed. After this, they turned their faces to the assembly, and having sung some time, retreated slowly in a body, and placed themselves opposite the hut, where the principal spectators sat. One of them next advanced from each side, passing each other in the front, and progressively moving till they came to the rest. On which two advanced from each side, two of whom returned, but the other two remained; and to these, from each side, came one by intervals, till they all had, once more, formed a circle about the chorus.

Dancing to a quicker measure now succeeded, in which the performers made a kind of half-turn by leaping; then clapping their hands, and snapping their fingers, repeated some words in unison with the chorus. As they proceeded in the dance, the rapidity of their music increased; their gestures and attitudes were varied with wonderful dexterity; and some of their motions would, by

A NIGHT DANCE BY WOMEN IN HAWAII.

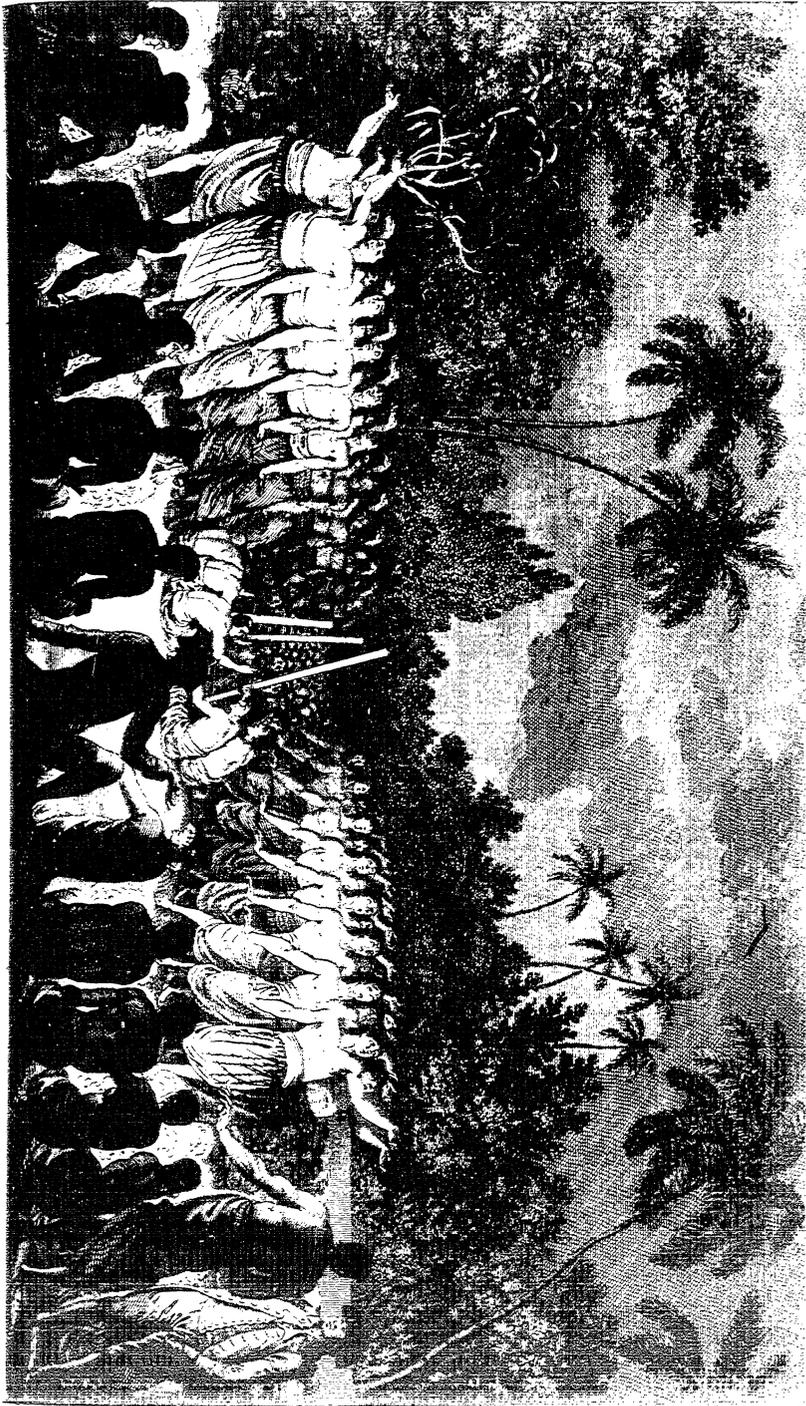
an European, be thought rather indecent; though, perhaps, they meant only to display the astonishing variety of their movements.

This famous ballet was succeeded by one performed by fifteen men; and, though some of them were old, time seemed to have robbed them of but little of their agility. They were disposed in a sort of circle, divided at the front. Sometimes they sung slowly, in concert with the chorus, making several graceful motions with their hands, but differing from those of the women; at the same time inclining the body alternately to either side, by raising one leg outward, and resting on the other; the arm of the same side being also stretched upward. Then they recited sentences, which were answered by the chorus; and occasionally increased the measure of the dance, by clapping the hands, and quickening the motions of the feet. Towards the conclusion, the rapidity of the music and dancing so much increased, that the different movements were hard to be distinguished.

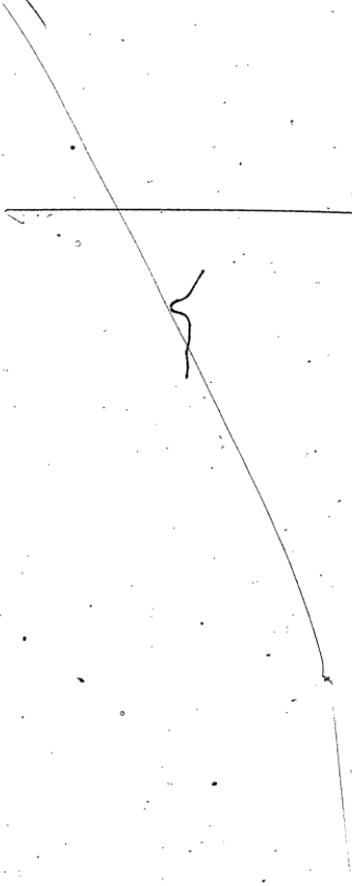
This dance being ended, after a considerable interval, twelve other men advanced, placing themselves in double rows, fronting each other. On one side was stationed a kind of prompter, who repeated several sentences, to which responses were made by the performers and the chorus. They sung and danced slowly; and gradually grew quicker, like those whom they had succeeded.

The

*Cook's Landing, Hawaii.*



11



The next who exhibited themselves were nine women, who sat down opposite the hut where the chief had placed himself. A man immediately rose, and gave the first of these women a blow on the back with both his fists joined. He treated the second and third in the same manner; but when he came to the fourth, he struck her upon the breast. Upon seeing this, a person instantly rising up from among the crowd, knocked him down with a blow on the head, and he was quietly carried away. But this did not excuse the other five women from so extraordinary a discipline; for they were treated in the same manner by a person who succeeded him. When these nine women danced, their performance was twice disapproved of, and they were obliged to repeat it again. There was no great difference between this dance and that of the first women, except that these sometimes raised the body upon one leg, and then upon the other, alternately, by a sort of double motion.

Soon after a person unexpectedly entered, making some ludicrous remarks on the fireworks that had been exhibited, which extorted a burst of laughter from the crowd. We had then a dance by the attendants of Feenou: they formed a double circle of twenty-four each round the chorus, and joined in a gentle soothing song, accompanied with motions of the head and hands. They also began with slow movements, which  
gra-

gradually became more and more rapid, and finally closed with several very ingenious transpositions of the two circles.

The festivity of this memorable night concluded with a dance, in which the principal people assisted. In many respects it resembled the preceding ones, but they increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder, insomuch that they appeared in danger of dislocating their necks. This was attended with a clapping of the hands, and a kind of savage holla! or shriek. A person, on one side, repeated something in a truly musical recitative, and with an air so graceful, as might put some of our applauded performers to the blush. He was answered by another, and this was repeated several times by the whole body on each side; and they finished, by singing and dancing, as they had begun.

The two last dances were universally approved by all the spectators. They were perfectly in time, and some of their gestures were so expressive, that it might justly be said, they spoke the language that accompanied them.

The theatre for these performances was an open space among the trees, bordering on the sea, with lights, placed at small intervals, round the inside of the circle. Though the concourse of people was pretty large, their number was much inferior to that assembled in the forenoon, when the marines performed their exercise. At that time

many

many of our gentlemen supposed there might be present five thousand persons, or upward; but Captain Cook supposes that to be rather an exaggerated account.

---

## C H A P. VI.

*Captain Cook makes an Excursion into Lefooga—Description of that Island—Occurrences there—A false Report propagated—A Female Oculist—Singular Method of shaving—The Ships are removed to another Station—A remarkable artificial Mount and Stone—Description of Hoolaiwa—Account of Poulabo, King of the Friendly Isles—The Commodore accompanies him on Shore—Departure from the Hapae Islands—Kotao described—The Ships return to Annamooka—Meeting of Poulabo and Feenou—Both the Ships strike on the Rocks—Arrival at Tongataboo.*

THE next day, which was the 21st of May, Captain Cook made an excursion into the Island of Lefooga, on foot, which he found to be, in some respects, superior to Annamooka, the plantations being not only more numerous, but also more extensive. Many parts of the country, near  
the

the sea, are still waste; owing perhaps to the sandiness of the soil. But, in the internal part of the island, the soil is better; and the marks of considerable population, and of an improved state of cultivation, are very conspicuous. Many of the plantations are enclosed in such a manner, that the fences, running parallel to each other, form spacious public roads. Large spots, covered with the paper mulberry-trees, were observed; and the plantations in general, were abundantly stocked with such plants and fruit-trees as the island produces. To these the Commodore made some addition, by sowing the seeds of melons, pumpkins, Indian corn, &c. At one place was a house, about four times as large as the ordinary ones, with an extensive area of grass before it, to which the people probably resort on some public occasions. Near the landing-place we observed a mount two or three feet high, on which stood four or five little huts, wherein the bodies of some persons of distinction had been interred. The island is but seven miles in length; and its breadth, in some places, is not above three miles. The east-side has a reef, projecting considerably, against which the sea breaks with great violence. It is a continuation of this reef that joins Lefooga to Foa, which is but half a mile distant; and, at low water, the natives can walk upon this reef from one island to the other. The shore is either a sandy beach, or a coral-rock.

When

When the Captain returned from his excursion, and went on board, he found a large sailing canoe fastened to the stern of the Resolution. In this canoe was Latooliboula, whom the Commodore had seen, during his last voyage, at Tongataboo, and who was then supposed by him to be the king of that island\*. He could not be prevailed upon to come on board, but continued sitting in his canoe with an air of uncommon gravity. The islanders called him *Areekee*, which signifies King; a title which we had not heard any of them give to Feenou, however extensive his authority over them had appeared to be. Latooliboula remained under the stern till the evening, and then departed. Feenou was on board the Resolution at that time; but neither of these chiefs took the smallest notice of the other.

The next day, some of the natives stealing a tarpaulin and other things, Captain Cook applied to Feenou, desiring him to exert his authority, for the purpose of getting them restored; but this application was of no effect. On the 23d, as we were preparing to leave the island, Feenou and his prime-minister Taipa came along-side in a canoe, and informed us that they were going to

\* In Captain Cook's narrative of that voyage, the name of this chief is said to be *Kabagee-too Fallangou*, which is totally different from *Latooliboula*. This may perhaps be accounted for, by supposing one to be the name of the person, and the other the description of his rank or title.

Vavaoo, an island situate, as they said, about two days sail to the northward of Hapae. They assured us, that the object of their voyage was to procure for us an additional supply of hogs, besides some red-feathered caps for Omai to carry with him to Otaheite; and desired us not to sail till their return, which would be in four or five days; after which Feenou would accompany us to Tongataboo. Captain Cook consented to wait the return of this chief, who immediately set out for Vavaoo. On the 24th, a report was industriously spread about by some of the islanders, that a ship resembling ours had arrived at Annamooka since we left it, and was now at anchor there. It was also reported, that Toobou, the chief of that island, was hastening thither to receive these new visitors. After enquiry, however, it appeared; that this report was totally void of foundation. It is difficult to conjecture, what purpose the invention of this tale could answer; unless we suppose it was contrived with a view of getting us removed from one island to the other.

On Saturday the 25th, Captain Cook went into a house where a woman was dressing the eyes of a child, who seemed blind. The instruments used by this female oculist were two slender wooden probes, with which she brushed the eye so as to make them bleed. In the same house he found another woman shaving a child's head with a shark's

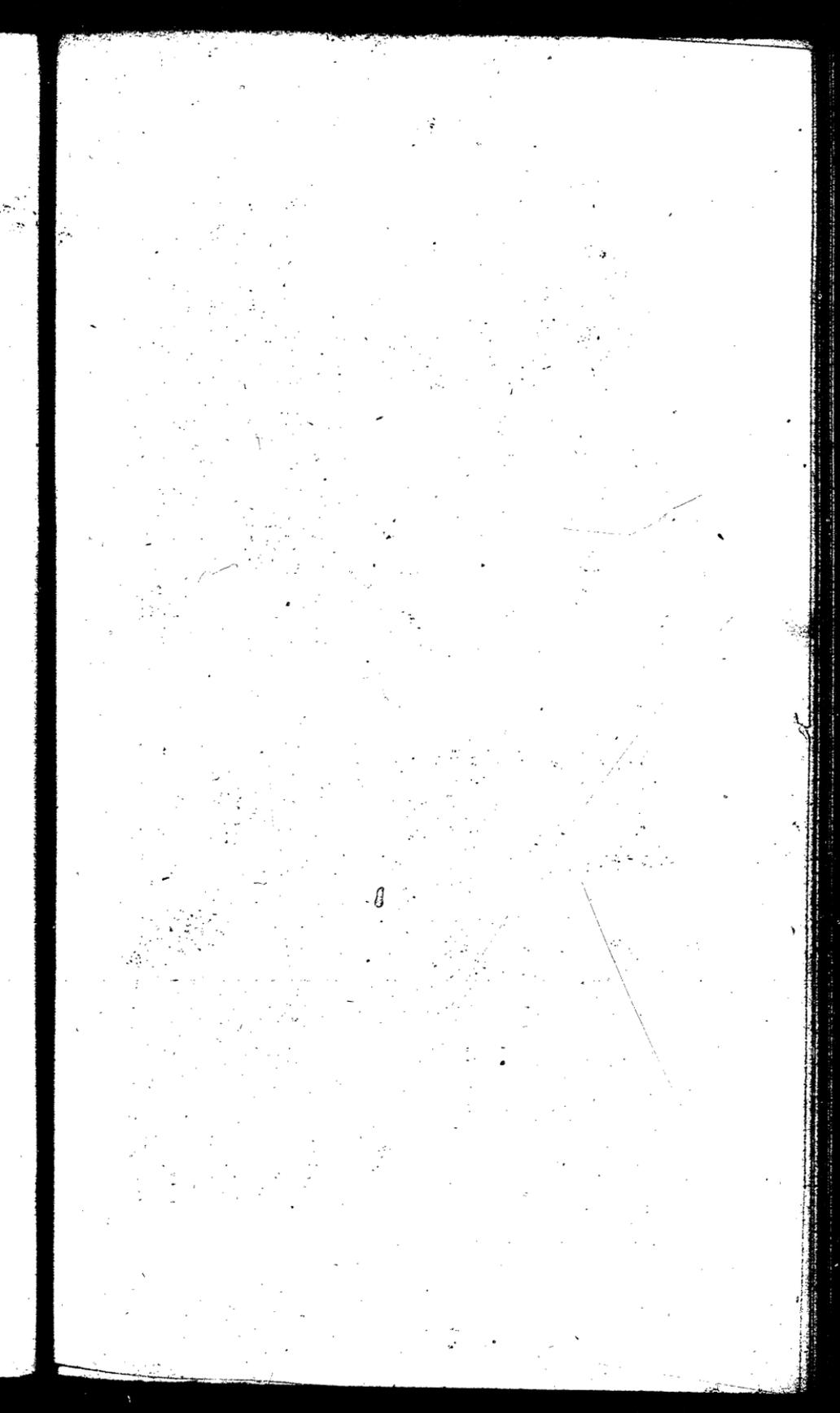
shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a stick: she first wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, and then making use of her instrument, took off the hair as close as if a razor had been employed. Captain Cook soon after tried upon himself one of these remarkable instruments, which he found to be an excellent substitute. The natives of these islands, however, have a different method of shaving their beards, which operation they perform with two shells; one of which they place under a part of the beard, and with the other, applied above, they scrape off that part: in this manner they can shave very close, though the process is rather tedious. There are among them some men who seem to profess this trade: for it was as common for our sailors to go ashore to have their beards scraped off after the mode of Hapace, as it was for their chiefs to come on board to be shaved by our barbers.

Captain Cook finding that little or nothing of what the island produced was now brought to the ships, determined to change his station, and to wait Feenou's return in some other anchoring-place, where we might still meet with refreshments. We accordingly, on the 26th, made sail to the southward along the reef of the island, and having passed several shoals, hauled into a bay, that lies between the north end of Hoolaiva, and the south of Lefooga, and there anchored. We had no sooner cast anchor, than Mr. Bligh, Master

ter of the Resolution, was sent to found the bay where we were now stationed; and Captain Cook, accompanied by Lieutenant Gore, landed on the southern part of Lefooga, to look for fresh water, and examine the country. On the west side of the island, they observed an artificial mount of considerable antiquity, about forty feet high, and measuring fifty feet in the diameter of its summit. At the bottom of this mount was a stone fourteen feet high, two and a half thick, and four broad, hewn out of coral-rock; and they were informed by the islanders, that not more than half its length was seen above ground. They called it *Tangata Areekee* \*; and said it had been set up, and the mount raised, in memory of one of their kings. On the approach of night, the Captain and Mr. Gore returned on board, and Mr. Bligh came back from sounding the bay, in which he found from fourteen to twenty fathoms water, with a bottom principally of sand.

Lefooga and Hoolaiva are separated from each other by a reef of coral-rocks, dry at low water. Some of our gentlemen, who landed in the last mentioned island, found not the smallest mark of cultivation, or habitation, upon it, except a single hut, in which a man employed to catch fish and turtle resided. It is remarkable that it should

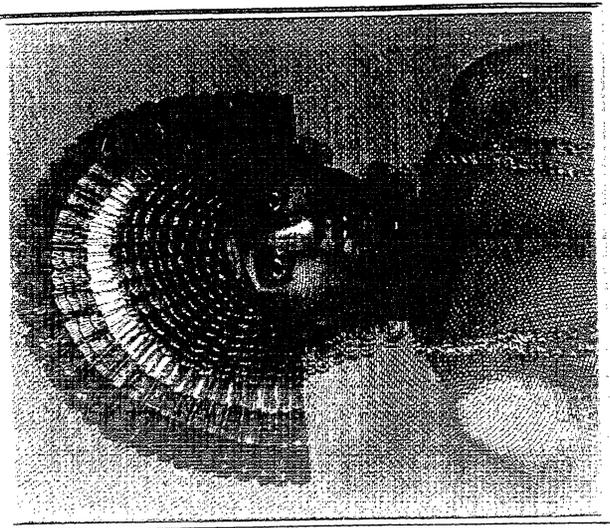
\* *Tangata*, in the language of these people, is man; *Areekee*, king.



*Crook's (Lodge) Oratio. Baltimore.*



*BY DUNNELL. 63: 106. U.P. 30.*



*THE KING OF THE FETTERED ISLANDS.*

remain in this desolate condition, since it communicates so immediately with Lefooga, which is so well cultivated. The west side of it has a bending, where there seems to be good anchorage; and the east side has a reef, as well as Lefooga. Uninhabited as Hoolaiva is, an artificial mount has been raised upon it, equal in height to some of the surrounding trees.

On Tuesday the 27th, at break of day, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; and as he intended to attempt, in his way to Tongataboo, a passage to Annamooka, by the south-west, among the intermediate isles, he sent Mr. Bligh in a boat to sound before the ships. But before we got under sail, the wind became so variable and unsettled, as to render it unsafe to attempt a passage with which we were so little acquainted: we therefore lay fast, and made signal for the Master to return. He and the Master of the Discovery were afterwards sent, each in a boat, to examine the channels. Towards noon, a large sailing canoe came under our stern, in which was a person named Poulaho, or Futtafaihe, or both; who was said, by the natives then on board, to be king of Tongataboo, Annamooka, Hapae, and all the neighbouring islands. We were surprized to find a stranger dignified with this title, which we had been taught to believe appertained to another: but they persisted in their assertions, that the supreme dignity belonged to Poulaho; and

now for the first time acknowledged, that Feenou was not the king, but a subordinate chief, though of great power. Poulaho was now invited by the Captain on board, where he was not an unwelcome guest, as he brought with him two fat hogs by way of present. This great personage, though not very tall, was extremely unwieldy, and almost shapeless with corpulence. He appeared to be about forty; his hair was straight, and his features considerably different from those of the majority of his people. We found him to be a man of gravity and good sense. He viewed the ship, and the various new objects, with particular attention; and asked many pertinent questions. When he had gratified his curiosity in looking at the cattle, and other novelties, he was requested to walk down into the cabin; to which some of his retinue objected, saying, that, if he should go down thither, it would doubtless happen that people would walk over his head; a circumstance that could not be permitted. Though the Captain offered to obviate this objection, by ordering that no one should presume to walk over the cabin, Poulaho waved all ceremony, and went down without any previous stipulation. He now appeared to be no less solicitous than his people were, to convince us that he was sovereign, and not Feenou. He sat down to dinner with us, but eat and drank very little; and afterwards desired our Commodore to accompany

company him on shore. Omai was asked to be one of the party; but he was too faithfully attached to Feenou, to shew much respect to his competitor, and therefore declined the invitation. Captain Cook attended the chief in his own boat, having first made him such presents as exceeded his expectations; in return for which, Poulaho ordered two more hogs to be sent on board. The chief was then carried out of the boat, by his own subjects, on a board resembling a handbarrow; and immediately seated himself in a small house near the shore. He placed the Captain at his side; and his attendants formed a semi-circle before them, on the outside of the house. An old woman sat close to the chief, with a kind of fan in her hand, to prevent his being incommoded by the flies. The various articles which his people had procured by trading on board the ships, being now displayed before him, he attentively looked over them all, enquired what they had given in exchange, and, at length, ordered every thing to be returned to the respective owners, except a glass-bowl, which he reserved for himself. Those who brought these things to him, first squatted themselves down before him, then deposited their purchases, and instantly rose and retired. They observed the same ceremony in taking them away; and not one of them presumed to speak to him standing. His attendants, just before they left him, paid him obeisance, by

bowing their heads down to the sole of his foot, and touching it with the upper and under side of the fingers of each hand. Captain Cook was charmed with the decorum that was maintained on this occasion, having scarce seen the like any where, even among more civilized nations.

When the Captain arrived on board, he found the Master returned from his expedition, who informed him, that, as far as he had proceeded, there was a passage for the ships, and tolerable anchorage; but that, towards the south and south-east, he observed numerous shoals, breakers, and small isles. In consequence of this report, we relinquished all thoughts of a passage that way; and being resolved to return to Annamooka by the same route which we had so lately experienced to be a safe one, we should have sailed the next morning, which was the 28th, if the wind had not been very unsettled.—Poulaho came early on board, bringing a red-feathered cap as a present to Captain Cook. These caps were greatly sought after by us, as we knew they would be highly valued at Otaheite: but not one was ever brought for sale, though very large prices were offered; nor could a person in either ship make himself the proprietor of one, except the two Captains and Omai. They are composed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, intermixed with the red feathers of the parroquet; and are made in such a manner, as to tie on the forehead without any crown,

crowns, and have the form of a semi-circle, whose radius is eighteen or twenty inches. But the best idea of them will be conveyed by Mr. Webber's representation of Poulaho, ornamented with one of these caps or bonnets. The chief left the ship in the evening; but his brother, whose name also was Futtafaihe, and some of his attendants, remained all night on board.

On the 29th, at day-break, we weighed with a fine breeze at east north-east, and made sail to the westward, followed by several sailing canoes, in one of which was Poulaho the king, who, getting on board the Resolution, enquired for his brother, and the others who had continued with us all night. We now found that they had staid without his permission, for he gave them such a reprimand as brought tears from their eyes: however, he was soon reconciled to their making a longer stay; for, on his departure from the ship, he left his brother, and five attendants, on board. We were also honoured with the company of a chief named Tooboueitoa, just then arrived from Tongataboo; who, as soon as he came, sent away his canoe, declaring, that he, and five others who came with him, would sleep on board; so that Captain Cook now had his cabin filled with visitors. This inconvenience he the more willingly endured, as they brought with them plenty of provisions as presents to him, for which they met with suitable returns.

In the afternoon the easterly wind was succeeded by a fresh breeze at fouth south-east. Our course being now fouth south-west, we were obliged to ply to windward, and barely fetched the northern side of Footooha by eight o'clock in the evening. The next day we plied up to Lofanga, and got soundings, under the lee or north-west side, in forty fathoms water; but the bottom being rocky, and a chain of breakers lying to leeward, we stretched away for Kotoo, expecting to find better anchorage there. It was dark before we reached that island, where finding no convenient place to anchor in, we passed the night in making short boards. On the 31st, at break of day, we stood for the channel which is between Kotoo, and the reef of rocks lying to the westward of it; but, on our approach, we found the wind insufficient to lead us through. We therefore bore up on the outside of the reef, and stretched to the south-west till near twelve o'clock, when, perceiving that we made no progress to windward, and being apprehensive of losing the islands while we had so many of the natives on board, we tacked and stood back, and spent the night between Footooha and Kotoo. The wind now blew fresh, with squalls and rain; and, during the night, the Resolution, by a small change of the wind, fetching too far to the windward, was very near running full upon a low sandy isle, named Pootoo Pootooa, encompassed with breakers. Our people  
having

having fortunately been just ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, and most of them being at their respective stations, the necessary movements were performed with judgment and alertness; and this alone preserved us from destruction. The Discovery, being astern, incurred no danger.

This narrow escape so alarmed the natives who were on board, that they were eagerly desirous of getting ashore: accordingly, on the return of day-light, a boat was hoisted out, and the officer who commanded her was ordered, after landing them at Kotoo, to sound for anchorage along the reef that projects from that island. During the absence of the boat, we endeavoured to turn the ships through the channel between the reef of Kotoo and the sandy isle; but meeting with a strong current against us, we were obliged to desist, and cast anchor in fifty fathoms water, the sandy isle bearing east by north, about the distance of one mile. Here we remained till the 4th of June, being frequently visited by the king, by Tooboueitoo, and by people who came from the neighbouring islands to traffic with us. Mr. Bligh was, in the mean time, dispatched to sound the channels between the islands situate to the eastward; and Captain Cook himself landed on Kotoo, to take a survey of it. This island, on account of the coral reefs that environ it, is scarcely accessible by boats. Its north-west end is low; but it rises suddenly in the middle, and

terminates at the south-east end in reddish clayey cliffs. It produces the same fruits and roots with the adjacent islands, and is tolerably cultivated, though thinly inhabited. It is about two miles in length. While the Commodore was walking all over it, our people were occupied in cutting grass for the cattle; and we planted some melon seeds. On our return to the boat, we passed by some ponds of dirty brackish water, and saw a burying-place, which was considerably neater than those of Hapaee.

We weighed in the morning of the 4th, and, with a fresh gale at east south-east, made sail towards Annamooka, where we anchored the next morning, nearly in the same station which we had so lately occupied. Captain Cook soon after went on shore, and found the islanders very busy in their plantations, digging up yams for traffic. In the course of the day, about two hundred of them assembled on the beach, and traded with great eagerness. It appeared, that they had been very diligent, during our absence, in cultivating; for we now observed several large plantain fields, in places which, in our late visit, we had seen lying waste. The yams were now in the highest perfection; and we obtained a good quantity of them, in exchange for iron. Before the Captain returned on board, he visited the several places where he had sown melon and cucumber seeds; but found, to his great regret, that  
most

most of them had been destroyed by vermin; though some pine-apple plants, which he had also left, were in a thriving condition.

On Friday the 6th, about noon, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo, and informed us, that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, had sailed with him from that island, but had been lost in the late tempestuous weather, and every person on board of them had perished. This melancholy tale did not gain much credit with us, as we were by this time sufficiently acquainted with the character of the relater. The truth perhaps was, that he had been unable to procure at Vavaoo the expected supplies; or, if he obtained any there, that he had left them at Hapae, which lay in his way back, and where he must have heard that Poulaho had come to visit us; who therefore, he knew, would, as his superior, reap all the merit and reward of procuring these supplies, without having had any participation of the trouble. The invention, however, of this loss at sea was not ill imagined; for we had lately had very stormy weather. On the succeeding morning, Poulaho, and some other chiefs, arrived; at which time Captain Cook happened to be ashore with Feenou, who now appeared to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in arrogating a character to which he had no just claim; for he not only acknowledged Poulaho as sovereign of Tongataboo and the adjacent isles,

but affected to insist much on it. The Captain left him, and went to pay a visit to the king, whom he found sitting with a few of the natives before him; but, great numbers hastening to pay their respects to him, the circle increased very fast. When Feenou approached, he placed himself among the rest that sat before Poulaho, as attendants on his majesty. He at first seemed to be somewhat confused and abashed; but soon recovered from his agitation. Some conversation passed between these two chiefs, who went on board with the Captain to dinner; but only Poulaho sat at table. Feenou, after having made his obeisance in the usual mode, by saluting the foot of his sovereign with his head and hands, retired from the cabin; and it now appeared, that he could neither eat nor drink in the king's presence.

On the 8th, we weighed anchor, and steered for Tongataboo, with a gentle breeze at north-east. We were accompanied by fourteen or fifteen sailing vessels belonging to the islanders, every one of which outran the ships. The royal canoe was distinguished from the rest by a small bundle of grass, of a red colour, fastened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the stern of the canoe in the same manner as our ensign staffs. At five in the afternoon we descried two small islands, at the distance of four leagues to the westward; one was called Hoonga Hapae, and the other Hoon-

ga Tonga. They are situated in the latitude of  $20^{\circ} 36'$  south, about ten leagues from the western point of Annamooka. According to the information of two islanders who had been sent on board by Feenou as pilots, only five men resided on Hoonga Hapae, and Hoonga Tonga had no inhabitants. We still proceeded on a south-west course, and on the 9th saw several little islands, beyond which Eooa and Tongataboo appeared. We had at this time twenty-five fathoms water, the bottom consisting of broken coral and sand; and the depth gradually decreased, as we approached the above-mentioned small isles. Steering, by the direction of our pilots, for the widest space between those isles, we were insensibly drawn upon a large flat, on which lay innumerable rocks of coral, below the surface of the sea. Notwithstanding our utmost care and attention to avoid these rocks, we were unable to prevent the ship from striking on one of them: nor did the Discovery, though behind us, keep clear of them. It fortunately happened, that neither of the ships stuck fast, nor sustained any damage. We still continued our course, and the moment we found a place where we could anchor with any degree of safety, we came to; and the Masters were dispatched, with the boats, to sound. Soon after we had cast anchor, several of the natives of Tongataboo came to us in their canoes; and they, as well as our pilots, assured us, that we should meet

meet with deep water further in, free from rocks. Their intelligence was true; for, about four o'clock, the boats made a signal of having found good anchoring ground. We therefore weighed, and stood in till dark, when we anchored in nine fathoms water, with a clear sandy bottom. During the night, we had some rain; but early in the morning, the wind becoming southerly, and bringing on fair weather, we weighed again, and worked towards the shore of Tongataboo. While we were plying up to the harbour, the king continued sailing round us in his canoe; and at the same time there was a great number of small canoes about the ships. Two of these not getting out of the way of his royal vessel, he ran quite over them with the greatest unconcern. Among those who came on board the *Resolution*, was Otago, who had been so useful to Captain Cook when he visited Tongataboo in his last voyage; and one Toobou, who had, at that time, attached himself to Captain Furneaux. Each of them brought some yams and a hog, in testimony of friendship; for which they received a suitable return.

We arrived at our intended station about two o'clock in the afternoon of the 10th of June. It was a very convenient place, formed by the shore of Tongataboo on the south-east, and two little isles on the east and north-east. Here both our ships anchored over a sandy bottom, where the  
depth

depth of water was ten fathoms. Our distance from the shore exceeded a quarter of a mile.

---

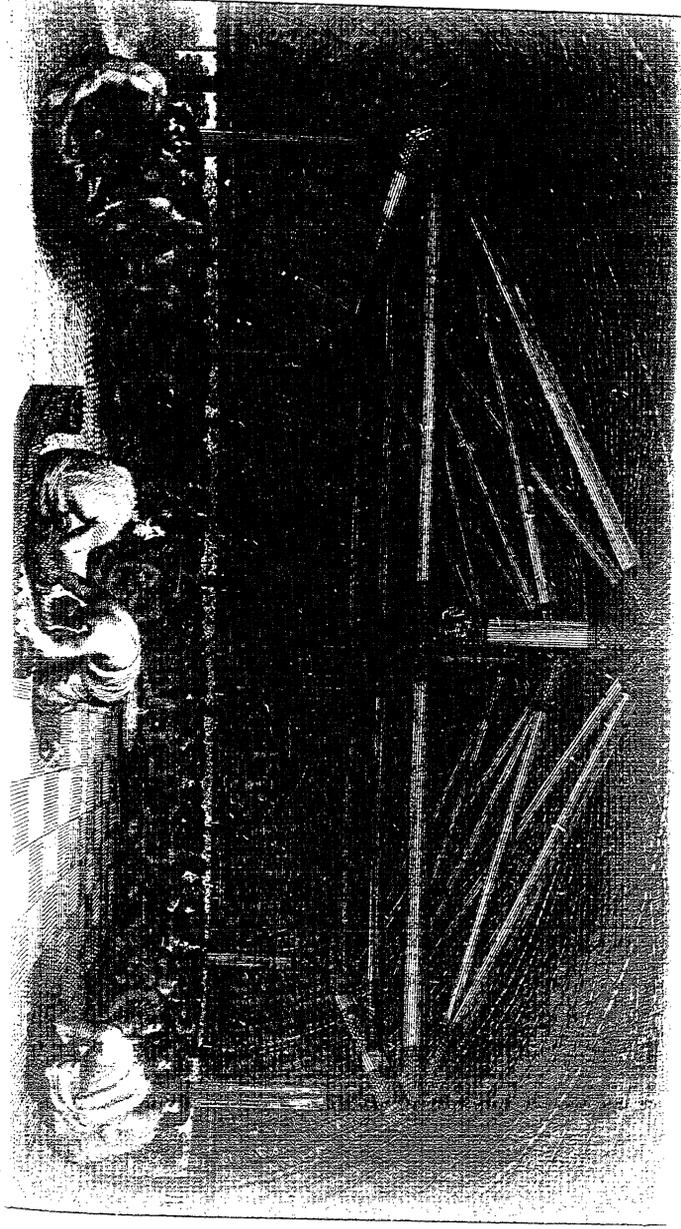
## C H A P. VII.

*Favourable Reception at Tongataboo—Distribution of Pork, Yams, and Kava among the King's Attendants—The Ships supplied with Water—The Observatory erected—The Natives flock to our People from all Quarters—Excursion of our Captains to see Mareewagee—Their Disappointment—Description of the Village where the Chiefs reside—Interviews with Mareewagee and Toobou—Presents from the King's Son—A curious Work of Art—Process of manufacturing Cloth—A grand Haiva given by Mareewagee—Exhibition of Fireworks—Wrestling—Boxing—Presents of Animals to the Chiefs—Poulabo, Feenou, &c. confined—The King's Present, and Haiva.*

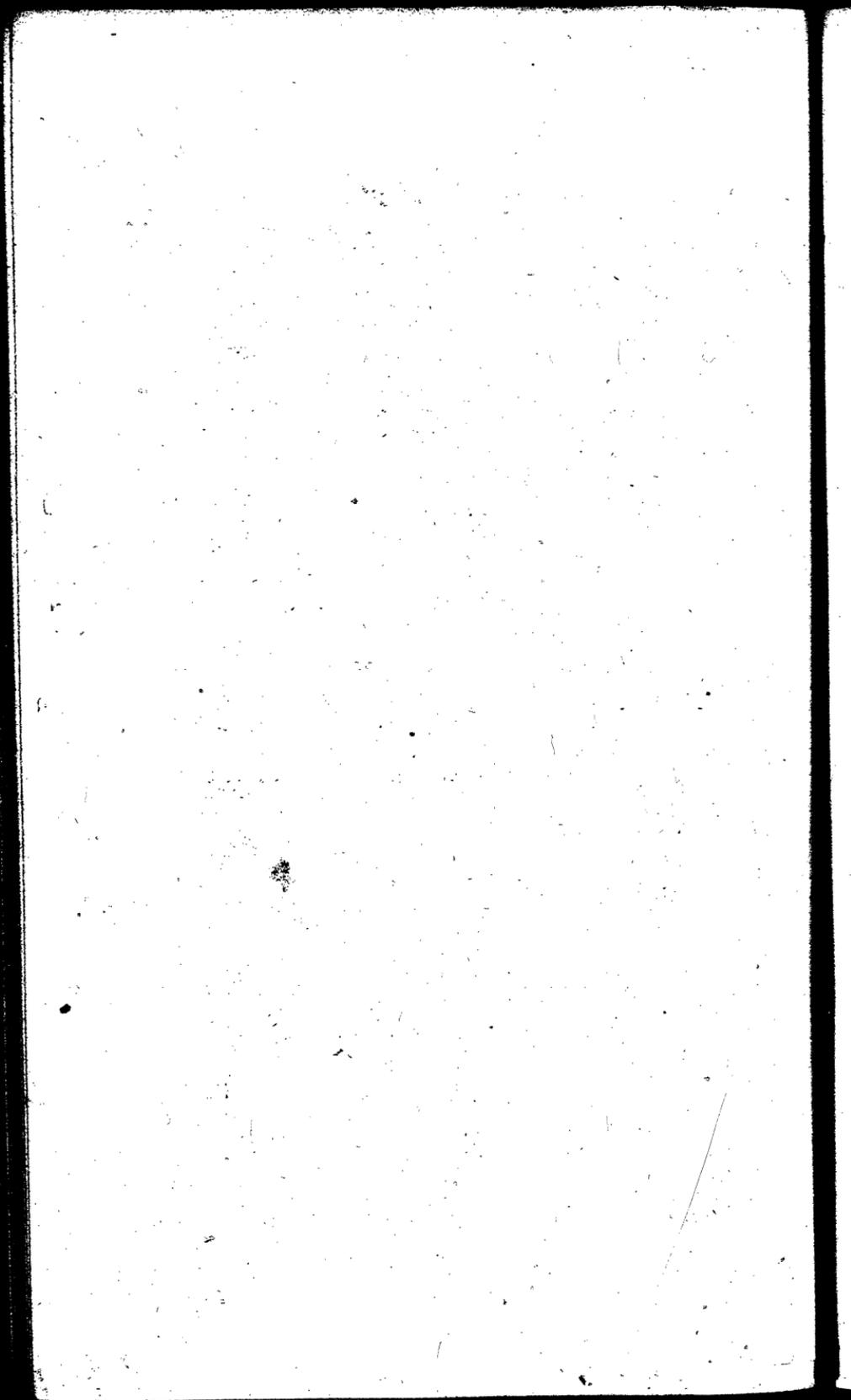
**W**E had not been long at anchor off Tongataboo, when Captain Cook landed on the island, accompanied by some of the officers and Omai. They found the king waiting for them on the beach, who conducted them to a small neat house near the woods, with an exten-

five

five area before it, and told the Captain, that it was at his service during his continuance in the island. Before they had been long in the house, a large circle of the natives assembled before them, and seated themselves upon the area. A root of the *kava* plant being brought to the king, he commanded it to be split into pieces, and distributed to several people, of both sexes, who began to chew it, and soon prepared a bowl of their favourite liquor. Mean while, a baked hog, and a quantity of baked yams, were produced, and divided into ten portions. These shares were given to some of those who were present, except one, which remained undisposed of, and which was probably reserved for the king himself. The liquor was next served out; and the first cup being brought to his majesty, he ordered it to be given to a person who sat near him: the second was also brought to him, which he kept: the third was given to Captain Cook; but, their mode of preparing the liquor having given him a distaste for it, it was brought to Omai. The remainder of it was distributed to different people; and one of the cups being carried to Poulaho's brother, he retired with this, and with his share of the provisions. Some others also withdrew from the circle with their portions, because they could neither eat nor drink in his majesty's presence: but there were others of an inferior rank, of both sexes, who both eat and drank before him.



*Cook's House, Chaco Mission.*



him. Soon afterwards, the greater part of them went away, carrying with them what they had not eat of their share of the feast. It is worthy of remark, that the servants, who distributed the meat and the *kava*, delivered it sitting, not only to the king, but to the others.

Captain Cook, before he returned on board, went in search of a watering-place, and was conducted to some ponds, in one of which the water was tolerable, but it was at some distance inland. Being informed that the small island of Pangimodoo, near which the ships were stationed, could better supply this important article, he went over to it the next morning, and found there a pool containing fresher water than any he had met with among these islands. This pool being extremely dirty, he caused it to be cleaned; and here it was that we filled our water-casks. The same morning, a tent was pitched near the house which the king had assigned for our use. The horses, cattle, and sheep, were then landed, and a party of marines stationed there as a guard. The observatory was set up at an inconsiderable distance from the other tent; and Mr. King took up his residence on shore, to direct the observations, and superintend all other necessary business. A party was occupied in cutting wood for fuel, and planks for the ships; and the gunners were appointed to conduct the traffic with the inhabitants, who flocked from all parts of the  
I island

island with hogs, yams, cocoa-nuts, and other articles, infomuch, that our land station resembled a fair, and our ships were remarkably crowded with visitants. Feenou residing in our neighbourhood, we had daily proofs of his opulence and generosity, by the continuance of his valuable donations. Poulaho was equally attentive to us in this respect, as scarcely a day passed without his favouring us with considerable presents. We were now informed, that a person of the name of Mareewagee was of very high rank in the island, and was treated with great reverence; nay, if our interpreter Omai did not misunderstand his informers, that he was superior to Poulaho himself; but that, being advanced in years, he lived in retirement, and therefore was not inclined to pay us a visit. This intelligence exciting the curiosity of Captain Cook, he signified to Poulaho his intention of waiting upon Mareewagee; and the king having agreed to accompany him, they set out the next morning in the pinnace, Captain Clerke joining them in one of his own boats. They proceeded to the eastward of the little isles which form the harbour, and then, turning towards the south, entered a spacious bay, up which they rowed about three miles, and landed amidst a great concourse of people, who received them with shouts and acclamations. The crowd instantly separated, that Poulaho might pass, who took our gentlemen into

into a small enclosure, and changed the piece of cloth he wore, for a new piece, very neatly folded: an old woman assisted in dressing him, and put a large mat over his cloth. Being now asked where Mareewagee was, he said, to the great surprize of the gentlemen, that he was gone down to the ships. However, he requested them to accompany him to a *malase*, or house of public resort; and when they came to a large area before it, he seated himself in the path, while they, at his desire, walked up to the house, and sat down in the front. After waiting a little while, they repeated their enquiries, by the medium of Omai, whether they were to be introduced to Mareewagee? But receiving no satisfactory answer, and being inclined to suspect that the aged chief was purposely concealed from them, they returned to their boats much piqued at their disappointment. It afterwards appeared, that Mareewagee had not been there; and that, in this affair, some gross mistakes had been made, Omai either having been misinformed, or having misunderstood what was told him concerning the old chief.

The place our gentlemen went to was a very pleasant village, delightfully situated on the banks of the bay or inlet, where most of the principal persons of the island reside. Each of these has his house in the midst of a small plantation, with a kind of out-houses, and offices for

servants. These plantations are neatly fenced round, and, in general, have only one entrance, which is by a door fastened on the inside with a prop of wood. Between each plantation there are public roads and narrow lanes. A considerable part of some of these enclosures is laid out in grass-plots, and planted with such things as seem less adapted for use than for ornament. In such other plantations as were not the residence of persons of high rank, every article of the vegetable produce of the island was in great plenty. Near the public roads are some large houses, with spacious grass-plots before them, which were said to belong to the king, and are probably the places where their public meetings are held.

On Friday the 13th, about twelve o'clock, Mareewagee came within a small distance of our post on shore, attended by a great number of people of all ranks. In the course of the afternoon, the two Captains, and others of our gentlemen, accompanied by Feenou, went ashore to visit him. They found a person sitting under a tree, with a piece of cloth, about forty yards long, spread before him, round which numbers of people were seated. They imagined that this was the great personage, but were undeceived by Feenou, who informed them, that another, who was sitting on a piece of mat, was Mareewagee. To him they were introduced by Feenou; and he received them very graciously, and desired them to

fit down by him. The chief, who sat under the tree, was named Toobou, whom we shall for the future call Old Toobou, to distinguish him from his namesake, who has been already mentioned as Captain Furneaux's friend. Both he and Mareewagee were venerable in their appearance. The latter was slender in his person, and seemed to be near seventy years of age. Old Toobou was somewhat corpulent, and almost blind from a disorder in his eyes: he was younger than Mareewagee. Captain Cook not expecting on this occasion to meet with two chiefs, had brought on shore a present for one only: this therefore he was obliged to divide between them; but, as it happened to be considerable, both of them appeared to be satisfied. Our party now entertained them about an hour with the performance of two French horns and a drum; but the firing off a pistol that Captain Clerke had in his pocket, seemed to please them most. Before our gentlemen took their leave of the two chiefs, the large piece of cloth was rolled up, and presented to Captain Cook, together with a few cocoa-nuts. The next morning, Old Toobou came on board to return the Commodore's visit: he also visited Captain Clerke; and if our former present was not sufficiently considerable, the deficiency was not supplied. In the mean time, Mareewagee went to see our people who were stationed on shore; and Mr. King shewed him whatever we

had there. He was struck with admiration at the sight of the cattle; and the cross-cut saw rivetted his attention. Towards noon, Poulaho came on board, bringing with him his son, who was about twelve years of age. He dined with Captain Cook; but the son, though present, was not permitted to sit down with him. The Captain found it very convenient to have him for his guest; for, whenever he was present, (which was frequently the case) every other native was excluded from the table, and few of them would continue in the cabin: whereas, if neither he nor Feenou were on board, the chiefs of inferior rank were very importunate to be of the dining party, or to be admitted at that time into the cabin, which became consequently very much crowded. The king was soon reconciled to our cookery, and was fond of our wine. He now resided at the *malae* near our tent, where he this evening entertained our people with a dance, in which he himself, though so corpulent and unwieldy, engaged.

On the 15th, Captain Cook received a message from Old Toobou, importing, that he was desirous of seeing him on shore. He and Omai accordingly waited on that chief, whom they found sitting, like one of the ancient patriarchs, under the shade of a tree, with a large piece of cloth, the manufacture of the island, spread out before him. He desired them to place themselves  
by

by him; after which he told Omai, that the cloth, with some cocoa-nuts, and red feathers, constituted his present to Captain Cook. The latter thanked him for the donation, and requested him to go on board with him. Omai, being sent for by Poulaho, now left the Captain, who was informed by Feenou, that young Fattafaihe, the king's son, desired to see him. He immediately obeyed the summons, and found the young prince and Omai seated under a canopy of fine cloth, with a piece of a coarser kind, seventy-six yards long, and seven and a half broad, spread before them and under them. On one side was a quantity of cocoa-nuts; and, on the other, a large boar. A multitude of people sat round the cloth; and among them was Mareewagee, with other persons of rank. The Captain was requested to seat himself by the prince; and then Omai informed him, that he had been instructed by Poulaho to tell him, that as his Majesty and the Captain were friends, he hoped that his son Fattafaihe might be comprehended in this friendship; and that the Captain, as a testimony of his consent, would accept of the prince's present. Captain Cook readily agreed to this proposal, and invited them all to dine with him on board. Accordingly, the young prince, Old Toobou, Mareewagee, three or four subordinate chiefs, and two old ladies of high rank, accompanied the Commodore to the ship. Mareewagee was  
O 3 dressed

dressed in a new piece of cloth, with six patches of red feathers on the skirts of it. This dress was probably made on purpose for this visit; for, as soon as he arrived on board, he put it off, and presented it to Captain Cook. When dinner was served up, not one of them would even sit down, or eat a morsel of any thing, as they were all *taboo*, they said; which word, though it has a very comprehensive meaning, generally signifies that a thing is prohibited. Why they were thus restrained at present, was not accounted for. Having made presents to them all, and gratified their curiosity by shewing them every part of the ship, the Captain conducted them ashore. When the boat had reached the land, Feenou and several others immediately stepped out; and the young prince following them, was called back by Mareewagee, who now paid the heir apparent the same obeisance which the king was accustomed to receive; and when Old Toobou, and one of the old ladies, had honoured him with the same marks of respect, he was suffered to land. After this ceremony, the old people stepped out of the boat into a canoe, which was waiting to convey them to their place of residence. Capt. Cook was pleased at being present on this occasion, as he was thus furnished with the most convincing proofs of the supreme dignity of Poulaho and his son. By this time, indeed, he had gained some certain information with regard to the relative situation of  
several

several of the chiefs. He now knew, that old Toobou and Mareewagee were brothers. Both of them were men of very considerable property, and in high estimation with the people: Mareewagee, in particular, had obtained the honourable appellation of *Motooa Tonga*, which implies, father of Tonga, or of his country. We also now understood, that he was the king's father-in-law, Poulaho having espoused one of his daughters, by whom he had young Fattafaihe; so that Mareewagee was grandfather to the prince. As for Feenou, he was one of the sons of Mareewagee, and Tooboueitoa was another.

Captain Cook, on his landing, found Poulaho in the house adjoining to our tent, who immediately made him a present of a quantity of yams and a hog. Towards evening a number of the islanders came, and having seated themselves in a circle, sung in concert with the music of bamboo-drums, which were placed in the centre. Three of them were long ones, and two were short. With these they struck the ground endwise. There were two others that lay side by side on the ground, one of which was partly split: on these a person continued beating with two sticks. They sung three songs while the Captain staid; and the entertainment lasted, after he left them, till ten o'clock. They burned the leaves of the *wharra* palm for a light.

In the mean time, Mr. Anderson, with several others, made an excursion into the country, which furnished him with observations to the following effect. Westward of the tent, the country for about two miles is entirely uncultivated, though covered with trees and bushes growing naturally with the greatest vigour. Beyond this a pretty large plain extends itself, on which are cocoa-trees, and some small plantations. Near the creek, which runs west of the tent, the land is perfectly flat, and partly overflowed every tide by the sea. When the water retires, the surface is seen to consist of coral-rock, interspersed with holes of yellowish mud; and near the edges, where it is rather more firm, are vast numbers of little openings, whence issue innumerable small crabs, which swarm upon the spot, but are so very nimble, that, when approached, they instantaneously disappear, and baffle all the dexterity of the natives who endeavour to catch them. At this place is a work of art, which testifies some degree of ingenuity and perseverance: on one side is a narrow causeway, which, gradually increasing in breadth, rises with a gentle ascent to the height of ten feet, where its breadth is five paces, the whole length being about seventy-four paces. Adjacent to this is a kind of circus, thirty paces in diameter, about one or two feet higher than the causeway that joins it; and in the middle of this circus some trees are planted. On the opposite

posite side, another causeway descends, which is partly in ruins, and not above forty paces in length. The whole is built of large coral-stones, with earth on the surface, which is overgrown with shrubs and low trees. From its decaying in several places, it is probably of some antiquity. It seems to be of no service at present, whatever may have been its use in former times. All the intelligence concerning it, that Mr. Anderson could procure from the natives, was, that it was called *Etchee*, and belonged to the king.

In the morning of the 16th, Captain Cook and Mr. Gore took a walk into the country; in the course of which they met with an opportunity of seeing the whole process of making cloth, the principal manufacture of these islands, as well as of many others in the South-Sea. An account of this operation, as performed here, may not improperly be subjoined. The manufacturers, who are of the female-sex, take the slender stalks or trunks of the paper-mulberry, which rarely grows more than seven feet in height, and about the thickness of four fingers. From these stalks they strip the bark, and scrape off the exterior rind; after which the bark is rolled up, and macerated for some time in water; it is then beaten with a square instrument of wood, full of coarse grooves, but sometimes with a plain one. The operation is often repeated by another person; or the bark is folded several times, and beat longer, which is probably

probably intended to close rather than divide its texture. It is then spread out to dry; the pieces being from four, to six or seven feet in length, and about half as broad. These pieces are joined by smearing part of them with the glutinous juice of a berry called *tooo*; and, after being thus lengthened, they are placed over a large piece of wood, with a sort of stamp, composed of a fibrous substance, laid beneath them. The manufacturers then take a bit of cloth, and having dipped it in a juice expressed from the bark of a tree called *kokka*, rub it briskly over the piece that is making. This leaves upon the surface a dry gloss, and a dull brown colour; and the stamp makes, at the same time, a slight impression. Thus they proceed, joining and staining by degrees, till a piece of cloth, of the requisite length and breadth, is produced. They generally leave a border, about a foot broad, at the sides, and rather longer at the ends, unstained. If any parts of the original pieces have holes, or are too thin, they glue spare bits upon them, till their thickness equals that of the rest. Whenever they are desirous of producing a black colour, they mix the juice of the *kokka* with the foot procured from an oily nut called *doedooe*. They assert, that the black cloth, with is usually most glazed, makes a cold dress; but the other, a warm one.

The Commodore and Mr. Gore, meeting with Feenou on their return from their excursion, took  
him,

him, and another chief, on board to dinner; which being served up, neither of them would eat a morsel, alledging that they were *taboo avy*; but when they found, that, in dressing a pig and some yams, no *avy* (water) had been made use of, they both sat down, and eat very heartily, and drank some wine, on being assured that there was no water in it. From this circumstance we inferred, that they were at this time, for some particular reason, forbidden to use water; or that, perhaps, they did not like the water we then used, it being taken out of one of the places where the islanders bathed.

The following day, which was the 17th, was fixed upon by Mareewagee for giving a grand *halva*, or entertainment, at which we were all invited to attend. Before the temporary hut of this chief, near our land station, a large space had been cleared for that purpose. In the morning, vast numbers of the natives came in from the country, every one of whom bore on his shoulder a long pole, at each end of which a yam was suspended. These poles and yams being deposited on each side of the open space, or area, formed two large heaps, decorated with small fish of different kinds. They were Mareewagee's present to the Captains Cook and Clerke. The necessary preparations being made, the islanders began, about eleven o'clock, to exhibit various dances, which they call *mai*. The band of music  
at

at first consisted of seventy men as a chorus, amidst whom were placed three instruments that we called drums, though they did not much resemble them. They are cylindrical pieces of wood, from three to four feet in length, some of them twice as thick as a man of ordinary size, and some not so large. They are entirely hollow, but close at each end, and open only by a chink, about the breadth of three inches, running nearly the whole length of the drums. By this opening, the rest of the wood is hollowed; which must be an operation of some difficulty. This instrument is called by the natives *nassa*; and, having the chink turned towards them, they sit and beat vigorously upon it, with two cylindrical pieces of wood, as thick as the wrist, and about a foot in length; by which means a rude, but loud and powerful sound, is produced. They occasionally vary the strength and rate of their beating; and likewise change the tones, by beating towards the end, or in the middle of the instrument.

There were four ranks, of twenty-four men each, in the first dance. These held in their hands a small thin wooden instrument, about two feet in length, resembling in its shape an oblong paddle. With these instruments, which are called *pagge*, they made many different motions; such as pointing them towards the ground on one side, and inclining their bodies that way at the same instant; then shifting them to the opposite side

in the same manner; passing them with great quickness from one hand to the other, and twirling them about with remarkable dexterity; with various other manœuvres. Their motions, which were slow at first, quickened as the drums beat faster; and they repeated sentences the whole time in a musical tone, which were answered by the chorus; but, in a short time, they all joined, and ended with a shout. After a cessation of a few minutes, they began as before, and continued, with short intervals, upwards of a quarter of an hour; and then the rear rank dividing, moved slowly round each end, met in the front, and formed the first rank; during which time the whole number continued to recite sentences. The other ranks successively did the same, till that which was foremost became the rear; and this evolution did not cease till the last rank regained its former situation. A much quicker dance, though slow at first, was then begun, and they sung for ten minutes, when the whole body, in a two-fold division, retreated, and then advanced, forming a kind of circular figure, which concluded the dance; the chorus retiring, and the drums being removed, at the same time.

In the second dance, there were forty men as a chorus, with only two drums; and the dancers (or rather actors) consisted of two ranks, the foremost of which had seventeen persons, and the other fifteen. Feenou was in the middle of the  
first

first rank, which is considered, on these occasions, as the principal place. They danced and repeated sentences, with very short intervals, for half an hour, sometimes slowly, and at other times quickly, with the highest degree of exactness and regularity. Towards the close, the rear-rank divided, came round, and occupied the place of the front, which afterwards resumed its pristine situation. This dance being finished, the drums were taken away, and the chorus retired, as in the preceding dance.

Three very large drums were now brought in, and seventy men served as a chorus to the third dance. This consisted of two ranks, of sixteen men each, having young Toobou at their head, who was splendidly ornamented with a kind of garment covered with red feathers. These persons danced, sung, and twirled the *pagge*, so as to meet with the continual applauses of the spectators, who were particularly pleased with a motion in which they held the face aside, as if ashamed, with the *pagge* before it. The hindmost rank closed before the front one, which soon after resumed its place, as in the first and second dances: then beginning again, they formed a triple row, divided, retreated to each end of the area, and left the ground in a great measure clear. Two men rushing in at that instant, began to exercise the clubs which they make use of in battle. They first twirled them in their hands, and  
made

made circular strokes before them with great quickness, managing with such skill, that, though they stood close to each other, they never interfered. They shifted the clubs, with uncommon dexterity, from one hand to the other; and, after some time, kneeled down, and made various motions, tossing up their clubs in the air, and catching them as they fell. They then retired as hastily as they had entered. They had pieces of white cloth about their heads, fastened at the crown with a wreath of foliage round their foreheads: and, that they might be free from all incumbrance, they had only a very small piece of cloth tied round the waist. A man, armed with a spear, then rushed in, and put himself in a menacing attitude, as if he intended to strike with his weapon at one of the people in the crowd; at the same time bending the knee a little, and trembling as it were with fury. He continued in this position near a minute, and then moved to the other side; where, having stood in the same posture, he hastily retreated from the area. During all this time the dancers, who had divided themselves into two parties, continued to repeat something slowly; and they now came forward, and joined again, concluding the dance with general applause. This dance was probably considered as a capital performance, as some of the principal people were engaged in it; one of the drums being beat by Futtasaihe, the king's brother,

ther, another by Feenou, and the third by Ma-  
reewagee himself.

In the fourth and last dance, there were forty men as a chorus, with two drums. The performers were sixty men, arranged in three rows, having twenty-four in front. Before they commenced, we were entertained with a preliminary harangue, in which the whole number made responses to an individual speaker. They recited sentences alternately with the chorus, and made with the *pagge* many quick motions. They divided into two parties, with their backs to each other; formed again, shifted their ranks (as in the preceding dances) divided, and retreated, being succeeded by two men who exercised their clubs, as before, after whom came two others; the dancers in the mean time repeating in their turns with the chorus: they then advanced, and terminated the dance.

These amusements continued from eleven o'clock till near three. The number of islanders who attended as spectators, together with those who were round the trading-place at the tent, or straggling about, amounted to at least ten thousand, all within the compass of a quarter of a mile. If we had understood what was spoken in this entertainment, we might probably have gained much information with regard to the genius and customs of these people. Though the spectators constantly applauded the different motions,  
when

when well made, a considerable share of the pleasure they received, seemed to arise from the sentimental part, or what the performers recited. However, the mere acting part well deserved our notice, on account of the extensiveness of the plan, the variety of the motions, and the exact unity, ease, and gracefulness, with which they were performed.

In the evening we were entertained with the *bomai*, or night-dances, on a large area before the temporary dwelling-place of Feenou. They continued three hours; during which time about twelve of them were performed, nearly in the same manner as those at Hapace. In two of them, which were performed by women, a party of men came and formed a circle within their's. In another, which consisted of twenty-four men, many motions that we had not before seen, were made with the hands, and met with great applause. The music was once changed in the course of the evening; and, in one of the dances, Feenou himself appeared at the head of fifty men: he was well dressed in linen, and some small pictures were hung round his neck.

Though the whole entertainment was conducted with better order than could reasonably have been expected, yet our utmost care and attention could not prevent our being plundered by the natives, in the most daring and insolent manner. There was scarcely any thing which they did not en-

deavour to steal. They once, in the middle of the day, attempted to take an anchor from off the Discovery's bows; but without effect. The only violence of which they were guilty, was, the breaking the shoulder-bone of one of our goats; in consequence of which she died soon after. On Wednesday the 18th, an islander got out of a canoe into the Resolution, and stole a pewter-bason; but being detected, he was pursued, and brought along-side the ship. Upon this occasion, three old women in the canoe made loud lamentations over the prisoner, beating their faces and breasts with the palms of their hands in a very violent manner, but without shedding a tear. This mode of expressing sorrow occasions the mark which most of these people bear on the face, over their cheek-bones; for the repeated blows inflicted by them on this part, abrade the skin, and cause some blood to flow out; and when the wound is recent, it looks as if a hollow circle had been made by burning. On some occasions, they cut this part of the face with an instrument.

The same day Captain Cook bestowed some presents on Mareewaget, in return for those which had been received from that chief the preceding day; and as the entertainments then exhibited called upon us to make some exhibition in return, he ordered all the marines to go through their exercise, on the spot where the late dances had

had been performed; and, in the evening, some fire-works were also played off at the same place. The king, the principal chiefs, and a vast multitude of people, were present. The platoon firing seemed to please them; but, when they beheld our water-rockets, they were filled with astonishment and admiration. They did not much regard the fife and drum, or French horns, that were playing during the intervals. Poulaho sat behind every one, no person being permitted to sit behind him; and, that his view might receive no obstruction, none sat immediately before him; but a lane, as it were, was made by the spectators from him, quite down to the space allotted for playing off the fire-works.

While the natives were in expectation of this evening exhibition, they engaged, for the greatest part of the afternoon, in wrestling and boxing. When a person is desirous of wrestling, he gives a challenge by crossing the ground in a kind of measured pace, and clapping smartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and sends forth a hollow sound. If no opponent steps forth, he returns and sits down; but if an antagonist appears, they meet with marks of the greatest good-nature, generally smiling, and deliberately adjusting the piece of cloth that is fastened round the waist. They then lay hold of each other by this cloth, and he who succeeds in drawing his opponent to him, instantly endeavours to lift him

upon his breast, and throw him on his back; and if he can turn round with him in that position two or three times, before he throws him, he meets with great applause for his dexterity. If they are more equally matched, they quickly close, and attempt to throw each other by entwining their legs, or raising each other from the ground; in which struggles they display an extraordinary exertion of strength. When one of them is thrown, he immediately retires; while the conqueror sits down for near a minute, then rises, and goes to the side from which he came, where the victory is proclaimed aloud. After sitting for a short time, he rises again, and challenges; and if several antagonists appear, he has the privilege of choosing which of them he pleases to engage with: he may also, if he should throw his competitor, challenge again, till he himself is vanquished; and then the people on the opposite side chant the song of victory in favour of their champion. It frequently happens, that five or six rise from each side, and give challenges together; so that it is not uncommon to see several sets engaged on the field at the same time. They preserve great temper in this exercise, and leave the spot without the least displeasure in their countenances. When they find that they are too equally matched, they desist by mutual consent; and if it does not clearly appear which of them has had the advantage, both sides proclaim the victory.

victory, and then they engage again. But no one, who has been vanquished, is permitted to engage a second time with his conqueror.

Those who intend to box advance side-ways, changing the side at every pace, having one arm stretched out before, the other behind; and holding in one hand a piece of cord, which they wrap closely about it, when they meet with an opponent. This is probably intended to prevent a dislocation of the hand or fingers. Their blows are dealt out with great quickness and activity, and are aimed principally at the head. They box equally well with either hand. One of their most dexterous blows is, to turn round on the heel, just after they have struck their adversary, and to give him another pretty violent blow with the other hand backward. In boxing-matches, unless a person strikes his antagonist to the ground, they never sing the song of victory; which shews, that this diversion is less approved among them than wrestling. Not only boys engage in both these exercises; but it not unfrequently happens, that little girls box with great obstinacy. On all these occasions, they do not consider it as any disgrace to be overcome; and the vanquished person sits down with as much indifference as if he had never engaged. Some of our people contended with them in both exercises, but were generally worsted.

Captain Cook intending to leave behind him some of the animals he had brought, thought proper to make a distribution of them before his departure. He therefore, on the 19th, assembled the chiefs before our house, and marked out his intended presents to them. To the king he gave a bull and a cow; to Mareewagee, a Cape ram, and two ewes; and to Feenou, a horse and a mare. He instructed Omai to tell them, that no such animals existed within several months sail of their island; that we had brought them, with a great degree of trouble and expence, for their use; that, therefore, they ought to be careful not to kill any of them till they had multiplied considerably; and, finally, that they and their posterity ought to remember, that they had received them from the natives of Britain. Omai also explained to them their respective uses, as far as his limited knowledge in such points would permit him. The Captain had intended to give old Toobou two or three goats; but finding that chief indifferent about them, he added them to the share of Poulaho. It soon appeared, that some of the natives were dissatisfied with the allotment of our animals; for, the next morning, two of our turkey-cocks, and one kid, were missing. Our Commodore being determined to get them restored, seized on three canoes that were along-side the ships; then went on shore, and having found his majesty, his brother, Feenou, and

and some other chiefs, in our house, he immediately appointed a guard over them, and intimated to them, that they must continue under restraint, till not only the turkeys and the kid, but the other things of which we had been plundered at various times, were restored to us. They assured him, that the things in question should all be returned; and then sat down to drink *kava*, with an appearance of unconcern. Soon afterwards, an axe, and an iron wedge, were brought to us. Some armed natives, in the mean time, began to assemble behind the house; but they dispersed when a part of our guard marched against them; and the chiefs, at the instigation of the Commodore, gave orders that no more should appear. When he invited them to dine with him on board, they readily consented. Some of them having afterwards objected to Poulaho's going, he rose up immediately, and declared that he would be the first man. Accordingly, the chiefs went on board with Captain Cook, and remained in the ship till near four o'clock. He then conducted them ashore; and, not long after, the kid and one of the turkeys were restored to him. On their promising that the other turkey should be brought back the next morning, he released both them and the canoes.

Captain Cook now walked out with Omai, with a view of observing how the natives in our neighbourhood fared; for this was the usual time of

their meals. He found that they were, in general, ill supplied; a circumstance not to be wondered at, since most of the yams, and other provisions that they brought with them, were disposed of to us; and they were unwilling to return to their own habitations, while they could procure any sustenance near our post. That particular part of the island, where our station was, being uncultivated, there were none of the natives who had a fixed residence within half a mile of us. Those therefore who were at our post, were obliged to live under trees and bushes, or in temporary sheds; and the cocoa-trees were stripped of their branches, for the purpose of erecting huts for the chiefs.

Omai and the Captain, in the course of their walk, found six or seven women at supper together, two of whom were fed by the others. On their asking the reason of this circumstance, the women replied, *taboo mattee*. Upon further enquiry it appeared, that one of them, about two months before, had washed the corpse of a chief, on which account she was not allowed to handle any food for five months; and that the other had performed the same office to the dead body of a person of inferior rank, and was therefore under a similar restriction, though not for so long a space.

On Saturday the 21st, early in the morning, Pou-laho came on board, to invite Captain Cook to an

*haira*

*baiva* or entertainment, which he designed to give the same day. He had already had his head besmeared with red pigment, in order to communicate a red colour to his hair, which was naturally of a dark brown. The Captain, after breakfast, attended him to the shore, and found the islanders very busy in two places, fixing, in a square and upright position, four very long posts, at the distance of near two feet from each other. They afterwards filled up with yams the space between the posts; and fastened sticks across, from one post to another, at the distance of every four-feet; to prevent the posts from separating, by the weight of the inclosed yams, and also to ascend by. As soon as the yams had reached the summit of the first posts, they continued to fasten others to them, till each pile was thirty feet or more in height. They placed, on the top of one of the piles, two baked hogs; and, on the top of the other, a living one; and they tied another by the legs half-way up. The facility and dispatch with which these two piles were raised, were remarkable. After they had completed them, they accumulated some other heaps of yams, and also of bread-fruit, on each side of the area; to which a turtle, and a great quantity of excellent fish, were added. The whole of this, with some red feathers, a mat, and a piece of cloth, composed the king's present to Captain Cook. About one o'clock the *mai*, or dances, were begun.

The

The first of these very nearly resembled the first that was performed at Mareewagee's entertainment. The second was conducted by young Toobou; and in this, four or five women were introduced, who equalled the men in the exactness and regularity of their motions. Near the end, the performers divided, in order to leave room for two champions, who exercised their clubs. In the third dance, which was the last, two other men, with clubs, exhibited their skill and activity. The dances were succeeded by boxing and wrestling; and one man entered the lists with a kind of heavy club, made from the stem of a cocoa-leaf, but could meet with no opponent to engage him in so rough a diversion. Towards the evening, the *bomai*, or night-dances, began, in which the king himself, apparelled in English manufacture, was a performer: but neither these, nor the dances in the day-time, were so capital as those of Feenou, or Mareewagee.

The Commodore, in order to be present the whole time, dined on shore. Poulaho sat down with him, but neither eat nor drank, which was owing to the presence of a female, who had been admitted, at his request, to the dining party, and who, as we were informed in the sequel, was of superior rank to himself. This lady had no sooner dined, than she walked up to Poulaho, who applied his hands to her feet; after which she retired. He immediately dipped his fingers into  
a glass

a glass of wine, and then all her attendants paid him obeisance. At his desire, some of our fireworks were played off in the evening; but being damaged, they did not answer the expectations of the spectators.

---

## C H A P. VIII.

*Some Officers plundered of their Muskets, and other Articles, by the Natives—Om̄ai complains to the King of this Outrage—Consequences that it was probable might attend it—A Visit to Poulaho—Description of a Fiatooka—Country Entertainment at Poulaho's House—His Mourning Ceremony—Beastly Method of preparing Kava—Account of Onevy—Messrs. King and Anderson visit Futtasaihe—Entertained by him—Method of dressing Hogs, and carving them—Manner of passing the Night—Observations on the Country—Prepare for Departure—Description of the Island, its Animals, Vegetables, &c.*

**N**O more entertainments being expected on either side, and the curiosity of the populace being in a great degree satisfied, most of them deserted us the day after Poulaho's *hauva*.  
Still,

Still, however, we had thieves among us, and had continual instances of their depredations.

Some of the officers of both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, returned the 22d of June in the evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken their muskets and necessary ammunition with them, besides several small articles of the favourite commodities; the whole of which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them, in the course of their short journey. Inconvenient consequences were likely to have attended this affair; for, when our plundered travellers returned, they employed Omai, without consulting Captain Cook, to complain to the king of the treatment they had received. He, not knowing how the Captain would proceed in this affair, and apprehending that he might again lay him under restraint, set off early the next morning, and Feenou followed his example; so that not a chief of authority was now remaining in our neighbourhood. The Captain was offended at this business, and reprimanded Omai for having presumed to interfere in it. This reprimand induced him to endeavour to bring back his friend Feenou, and he succeeded in his negociation, by assuring him that no violent measures would be pursued to oblige the natives to return what they had stolen. Trusting to this declaration, Feenou came back in the

evening, and was favourably received. Poulaho also favoured us with his company the next day.

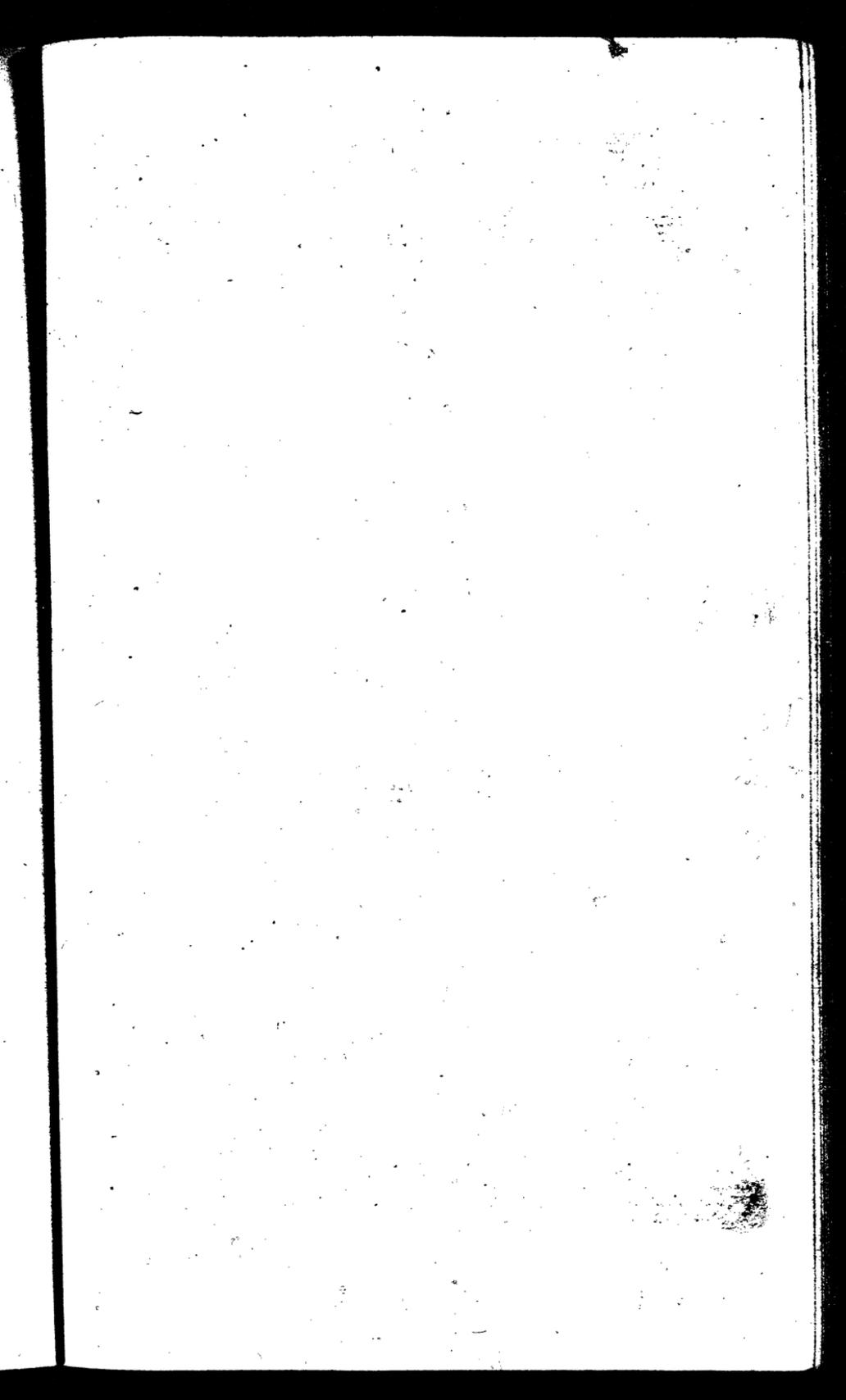
Upon this occasion, the two chiefs very justly observed to Captain Cook, that, whenever any of his people wanted to take an excursion into the country, they ought to be made acquainted with it, that they might order proper people to attend them, to prevent such outrages. And, had this precaution been taken, it is not to be doubted but that a man and his property would have been as safe here, as in other parts of the more civilized world. Though the Captain did not afterwards endeavour to recover the articles taken upon this occasion, the whole of them were returned, through the interposition of Feenou, except one musket, and a few other insignificant articles. By this time also, we recovered the tools and other matters, that had been stolen from our workmen.

On Wednesday the 25th of June, two boats, which Captain Cook had sent in search of a commodious channel to sea, returned. The commanders of them reported, that the channel to the north, through which we came in, was imminently dangerous, being full of coral rocks; that there was a good channel to the eastward, though contracted, in one place, by the small islands; consequently a westerly wind would be necessary to get through it. We had now recruited our ships, and repaired our sails, and had little more

to expect of the produce of the island; but, as an eclipse of the sun was to happen on the 5th of July, the Captain determined to stay till that time, to have a chance of observing it.

Having now some leisure before us, Captain Cook, and a party of us, accompanied by Poulaho, set out the next morning, in a boat, for Mooa, a kind of village, where he, and the other men of consequence, usually reside. Rowing up the inlet, we saw fourteen canoes fishing in company; in one of which was Poulaho's son. They had then taken some fine mullets, about a dozen of which they put into our boat. They shewed us their whole method of fishing, which appeared to be an effectual one.

Taking leave of the prince and his fishing party, we were rowed to the bottom of the bay, and landed where we had done before, when we went to see Mareewagee. As soon as we got on shore, we were conducted to one of Poulaho's houses; which, though tolerably large, seemed to be his private place of residence, and was situated within a plantation. The king seated himself at one end of the house, and those who came to visit him, sat down in a semi-circle at the other end. A bowl of *kava* was immediately prepared for us, and directions were given to bake some yams. While these were getting ready, some of us, together with a few of the king's attendants, and Omai as our interpreter, went to take a view of a  
fiatooka,



*Cook's Voyage, Plate 5.*



*J. W. T. 1806. Vol. II. Pl. 5. P. 1800.*

fiatooka, or burying-place, at a small distance from the habitation. It belonged to the king, and consisted of three largish houses, situated on a rising ground, with a small one not far off, all ranged longitudinally. The largest of the three first was the middle house, which was placed in a square, twenty-four paces by twenty-eight, and raised about three feet. The other houses were placed on little mounts. On the floors of these houses, as also on the tops of the mounts, were fine loose pebbles; and the whole was enclosed by large flat stones of coral rock. One of the houses was open on one side, and two wooden busts of men, rudely carved, were within it. We enquired of the natives who followed us (but durst not enter here) what these images were; who informed us, that they were memorials of some chiefs who had been buried there, and not meant as the representatives of any deity. Such monuments, it is presumed, are seldom raised; for these appeared to have been erected many ages.

We were informed that dead bodies had been buried in each of these houses, but no marks of them were to be distinguished. The carved head of an Otaheite canoe, which had been driven ashore on their coast, was deposited in one of them. On the rising ground was a grass-plot, on which different large trees were planted; among which were several of those called etoa.

They greatly resemble the cypress, and had a very solemn effect. A row of low palms was also planted near one of the houses.

After refreshing ourselves with some provisions, which we had brought from our ships, we took a pretty large circuit into the country, attended by one of the king's ministers, who would not suffer any of the rabble to follow us, and obliged those whom we met upon our progress, to sit down while we were passing; a mark of respect due only to their sovereigns. The greatest part of the country was cultivated, and most of their plantations fenced round. Some parts, indeed, lay fallow, and others in a state of nature; the latter afforded large quantities of timber.

We found many public and well-beaten paths, leading to different parts of the island. Traveling here was, indeed, very commodious, the roads being excellent, and the country level. We were conducted to several pools and springs of water, but they were, in general, either brackish or stinking.

In the dusk of the evening, we returned from our walk, and found our supper in readiness. It consisted of some fish and yams, and a baked hog, in which all the culinary arts of the island had been displayed. There being nothing to amuse us after supper, we lay down to sleep, according to the custom of the country, on mats spread upon the floor, and had a covering of cloth.

The

The king, who became happy with some wine and brandy which we had brought, also slept in the house, as did several others of the natives. Before day-break, they all rose, and entered into conversation by moon-light. As soon as it was day, they dispersed different ways, but it was not long before they all returned, accompanied by several of their countrymen.

While they were preparing a bowl of *kava*, Captain Cook went to pay a visit to Toobou, Captain Furneaux's friend, who had a house not far distant, which for size and neatness was hardly exceeded in the place. Here also we found a company preparing a morning draught. The chief made a present to the Captain of a living hog, and one that was baked; also a quantity of yams, and a large piece of cloth. Returning to the king, we found him and his attendants drinking the second bowl of *kava*. That business being performed, he informed Omai that he was immediately going to perform a mourning ceremony, called *tooge*, in memory of a son who had been some time dead, and desired us to accompany him. Naturally expecting to see somewhat new or curious, we readily complied with the request.

The king stepped out of the house, attended by two old women, and put on a new clothing, over which was placed an old ragged mat, which might probably have served his grandfather upon

a similar solemn occasion. His attendants were habited in the same manner, excepting that, in point of antiquity, none of their mats could vie with that of their master. Thus equipped, we marched off, preceded by eight or ten persons in the same uniform, each of them having likewise a green bough about his neck. Poulaho, who held his bough in his hand till he approached the place of rendezvous, then also put it about his neck. We now entered a small inclosure, wherein was a neat house, and a man sitting before it. As the company entered, they took the branches from their necks, and threw them away. The king seated himself, and the others sat before him in the usual manner. By the arrival of other persons, the circle increased to upwards of an hundred, principally old men, all dressed in the manner above described. The company being assembled, a large root of *kava* was produced by one of the king's servants, and a capacious bowl that would contain five or six gallons. Many persons now began to chew the root, and the bowl was filled with liquor up to the brim. Others were employed in making drinking-cups of plantain leaves. The first cup that was filled, being presented to the king, he ordered it to be given to another person; the second was also presented to him, and he drank it; the third was offered to Captain Cook. Afterwards a cup was given to several others, till the liquor was exhausted;

exhausted; and, though not half the company partook of it, no one appeared in the least dissatisfied. Each cup, as it was emptied, was thrown upon the ground, whence it was taken up, and carried to be filled again. All this time the chief, and his whole circle, sat with a great deal of gravity, hardly speaking a syllable to each other.

All this while we were in expectation of seeing the mourning ceremony begin, when, to our great surprize, as soon as the kava was drank out, they all rose up, and dispersed; and Poulaho informed us, he was now ready to attend us to the ships.

We had sometimes seen the drinking of kava at other islands, but no where so frequently as here. The *kava* is a species of pepper, which they esteem a valuable article; and cultivate for this purpose, carefully defending the young plants from any injury; and it is usually planted about their houses. It does not often exceed the height of a man, though they are sometimes seen much higher. It has large heart-shaped leaves, and jointed stalks.

Only the root of the kava is used at the Friendly Islands: after being dug up, it is given to the servants, who, breaking it in pieces, scrape the dirt off, and each chews his portion, which he afterwards spits into a piece of plantain leaf. Those, who are to prepare the liquor, collect these mouthfuls together, and deposit them in a large wooden bowl, adding a sufficient quantity

of water to make it of a proper strength. It is then well mixed up with the hands, and wrung hard, in order to make it productive of as much liquid as possible.

About a quarter of a pint of this beverage is usually put into each cup. It has no perceptible effect upon these people, who use it so frequently; but, on some of ours, it operated like our spirits, occasioning intoxication, or rather stupefaction.

The mourning ceremony being over, we left Mooa, and set out on our return to the ships. Rowing down the inlet, we met with two canoes returning from fishing. Poulaho ordered them to approach him, and took from them every fish and shell. He afterwards stopped two other canoes, searched them, and found nothing. He gave us some of the fish, and the rest were sold by his servants on board the ship. Proceeding down the inlet, we overtook a large falling canoe, when every person on board her sat down till we had passed; even the man who steered, though he could not possibly manage the helm, but in a standing posture.

Having been informed, by Poulaho and others, that there was some good water at Oaevy, a small island, about a league off the mouth of the inlet; we landed there, in order to taste it, but found it to be extremely brackish. This island is quite in a natural state, and only frequented as a fishing-

fishing-place; having nearly the same productions as Palmerston's island.

When we returned to the ship, Captain Cook was informed that every thing had been quiet during his absence; not a single theft having been committed; of which Feenou, and Futtafaihe, the king's brother, who had undertaken the management of his countrymen in the Captain's absence, boasted not a little. This evinces what power the chiefs have, when they are inclined to execute it; which is not often to be expected; for whatever was stolen from us, was generally conveyed to them.

The next day, six or eight of the natives assaulted some of our people who were sawing planks; in consequence of which they were fired on by the sentry; one of them was supposed to be wounded, and three were taken. The latter were confined till night, when they were punished, and set at liberty. After this their behaviour was very decent and circumspect; occasioned, as we imagined, by the man being wounded: for, till this time, they had only *heard* of the effect of fire-arms, but now they had *felt* it. We were not mistaken in our conjecture, for Mr. King, and Mr. Anderson, in an excursion they took into the country, met with the very man, and found indubitable marks of his having been wounded with a musket-ball.

Nothing worthy of notice happened at the ships for two days; we shall therefore fill up that interval with an account of Mr. Anderson's excursion, above-mentioned. On Monday the 30th of June, Mr. King, and he, accompanied Futafaihe as visitors to his house, which is not far from that of his brother Poulaho, at Mooa. Soon after they arrived, a largish hog was killed, which was effected by repeated strokes upon the head. The hair was then curiously scraped off, with the sharp edge of pieces of split bamboo, and the entrails taken out by the same simple instrument. Previous to this, an oven had been prepared, which is a large hole dug in the earth, the bottom of which is covered with stones, about the size of a man's fist, which are made red hot by kindling a fire over them; then they wrapt up some of these stones in leaves of the bread-fruit-tree, with which they filled the hog's belly; stuffing in a quantity of leaves to prevent their falling out, and thrusting a plug of the same kind in the anus. This being done, the carcase was placed upon some sticks laid across the stones, and covered with plantain-leaves. The earth was afterwards dug up all round; and the oven being thus effectually closed, the operation of baking required no farther aid.

They afterwards amused themselves by walking about the country, but saw nothing remarkable, except a fiatooka of about thirty feet high. At a  
small

small distance, there was a number of etooa-trees, on which were vast quantities of *Ternate* bats, making a most horrible noise. Not having their muskets, at this time, they could not kill any of them, but some, taken at Annamooka, measured almost a yard, when the wings were extended.

On their return to Futtafaihe's house, the baked hog was produced, accompanied with some cocoa-nuts, and several baskets of baked yams. The person who prepared the hog in the morning, now cut it up in a very masterly manner, with a knife made of split bamboo. Though the weight of it was at least fifty pounds, the whole was placed before them; when they took a small part, and desired the rest might be partaken of by the people sitting round. Futtafaihe could hardly be prevailed upon to eat a morsel.

Dinner being ended, they went, with him, and his attendants, towards the spot where Poulaho's mourning-ceremony was performed. They saw nothing but a kind of continuation of the same solemn rites, by way of condolence. Upon enquiring upon whose account it was now transacted, they were informed, that it was in memory of a chief who had long since died at Vavaoo; that they had practised it ever since, and should continue to do so for a considerable length of time to come.

They were entertained, in the evening, with a pig for supper, dressed like the hog, and, like that, accompanied with yams and cocoa-nuts. When the supper was over, a large quantity of cloth was brought for them to sleep in; but they were disturbed in their repose, by a singular instance of luxury, in which their men of consequence indulge themselves; that of being thumped or beat while they are asleep. Two women, who sat by Futtafaihe, performed this operation, which they call *tooge tooge*, by striking his body and legs, with both fists, till he fell asleep, and, with some intervals, continued it the whole night. The person being fast asleep, they abate a little of the strength and briskness of the beating; but, if they observe any appearance of his awaking, they resume it. In the morning they were informed, that Futtafaihe's women relieved each other, and went alternately to sleep. Such a practice as this, in any other country, would be supposed to be destructive of all rest; but here it operates like an opiate, and strongly shews what habit may effect.

They set out with Futtafaihe the next morning, and walked to the point, down the east-side of the bay. The country all along this side appeared to be well cultivated, but not so much inclosed as at Mooa. They found, that, in travelling, Futtafaihe exercised a power, which shewed the great authority the principal men are invested

invested with. To one place, he sent for fish; and to another, for yams; and his orders were as readily obeyed, as if he had been absolute master of all the people's property.

They crossed the bay, in the evening, to their station, in a canoe procured by Futtasaihe, by exercising his authority in calling to the first that appeared; he had also a large hog at this place, and wanted them to accept of a bundle of cloth; but, the boat being small, they objected; and he ordered it to be taken to them the next day. Thus ends Mr. Anderson's account of his excursion.

Captain Cook had prolonged his stay at this island, on account of the approaching eclipse; but, on looking at the micrometer, (on the 2d of July) he found some accident had happened to it, and that it was rendered useless, till repaired; which could not be done before the time it was intended to be used. We therefore got on board, this day, all the cattle and other animals, except those that were destined to remain. The Captain designed to have left a turkey-cock and hen, but two hens being destroyed by accident; and wishing to carry the breed to Otaheite, he reserved the only remaining pair for that purpose.

We took up our anchor the next day, and moved the ships behind Pangimodoo, to be ready for the first favourable wind to take us through  
the

the narrows. The king, who this day dined with us, took particular notice of the plates; which the Commodore observing, made him an offer of one, either of pewter, or of earthen ware. He made choice of the first, and mentioned the several uses to which he intended to apply it; two of which were so very extraordinary that they deserve to be related.

Whenever he should visit any of the other islands, he said he would leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as his representative, that the people might, in his absence, pay it the homage due to himself in person. On being asked, how he had usually been represented in his absence, before he was in possession of this plate, he informed us, that this singular honour had always been conferred on a wooden bowl, in which he washed his hands. The other use to which he meant to apply the plate instead of the bowl, was to discover a thief. When any thing had been stolen, and the thief not detected, the people were assembled before him, when he washed his hands in this vessel. After this it was cleaned, and every man advanced, and touched it with his hand, in the same manner that they touch his foot when they offer him obeisance. If touched by the guilty person, he dropped down dead immediately; and, if any one refused to touch it, such refusal was considered as a sufficient proof of his guilt.

In

In the morning of Saturday the 5th of July, the day of the eclipse, the weather was cloudy, with some showers of rain. About nine o'clock, the sun broke out at small intervals for about half an hour, but was totally obscured just before the beginning of the eclipse. The sun again appeared at intervals till about the middle of the eclipse; but was seen no more during the remainder of the day, so that we could not observe the end. This disappointment was the less to be lamented, as the longitude was sufficiently determined by lunar observations.

The eclipse being over, we packed up the instruments, and every thing was conveyed on board. None of the natives having taken any care of the three sheep allotted to Mareewagee, the Commodore ordered them to be carried back to the ships. He was apprehensive that, if they had been left there, they would probably be destroyed by dogs. These animals did not exist upon the island in 1773, when the Commodore first visited it; but there is now a plenty of them; partly from the breed left by him, and partly from some imported from an island, called *Feejee*. At present, however, the dogs have not got into any of the Friendly Islands, except Tongataboo.

Mr. Anderson has given us the following description of this island. Amsterdam, Tongataboo, or Tonga (as it is sometimes called by the natives) is about twenty leagues in circumference,

ference, rather oblong, though broadest at the east-end, and its greatest length is from east to west. The south-shore is straight, consisting of coral-rocks of about eight or ten feet high, terminating perpendicularly, except in some few places, where there are sandy beaches. The west-end is about five or six miles broad, and has a shore like that of the south-side; but the north-side is environed with shoals and islands; and the east-side is, most probably, like the south.

This island may, with propriety, be called a low one; the only eminent part, to be observed from a ship, is the south-east point, though many gently rising and declining grounds are perceivable by those who are on shore. Though the general appearance of the country does not exhibit that beautiful kind of landscape, produced by a variety of hills and vallies, rivulets and lawns, yet it conveys an idea of the most exuberant fertility. The surface, at a distance, seems entirely clothed with trees of various sizes: but the tall cocoa-palms raise their tufted heads high above the rest, and are a noble ornament to any country that produces them. The boogo, which is a species of the fig, is the largest sized tree upon the island; and the most common bushes and small trees, on the uncultivated spots, are the pandanus, the faitanoo, several sorts of hibiscus, and a few others,

The

The climate of Tongataboo, from the situation towards the tropic, is more variable than in countries far within that line; though that might, perhaps, be occasioned by the season of the year, which was now the winter solstice. The winds are generally from some point between south and east. The wind, indeed, sometimes veers to the north-east, or even north-west, but never continues long, nor blows strong from thence; though often accompanied by heavy rain, and close sultry weather.

The vegetable productions are never so much affected, respecting the foliage, as to shed it all at once; but every leaf, as it falls, is succeeded by another, which causes the appearance of universal spring.

A coral rock appears to be the basis of the island, that being the only sort that presents itself on the shore. There was not the appearance of any other stone, except some small blue pebbles about the *fiatookas*, and the smooth black stone, of which the natives make their hatchets; and these have, perhaps, been brought from other islands in the neighbourhood. Though, in many places, the coral projects above the surface, the soil is, in most parts, of a considerable depth. In cultivated places, it is generally of a loose black colour, seemingly produced by the rotten vegetables.

The

The principal of the cultivated fruits in this island, are plantains, of which they have fifteen varieties; the jambu, and the eeevee; the latter being a kind of plum; and vast quantities of shaddocks, as often found in a natural state as planted.

Of yams there are two sorts; one black, and so large as to weigh from twenty to thirty pounds; the other white and long, seldom exceeding a pound in weight. There is a large root, called kappe; another like our white potatoes, called mawhaha; the talo, and the jeejee:

They have vast numbers of cocoa-nut-trees, and three other sorts of palms. One is called becoo, growing almost as high as the cocoa-tree, and having very large leaves, plaited like a fan. The other is a kind of cabbage-tree, much resembling the cocoa, but rather thicker. A third sort is called ongo ongo; it seldom grows higher than five or six feet. Plenty of excellent sugar-cane is cultivated here; also gourds, bamboo, turmeric, and a species of fig, called matte; but the catalogue of uncultivated plants is too large to be enumerated.

There are no quadrupeds in this island, but hogs, dogs, and a few rats. Fowls of a large breed, are domesticated here.

Among the birds, are parrots, and parroquets; cuckoos, king-fishers, and a bird of the thrush kind, of a dull green colour, which is the only  
singing-

singing-bird we could find here; but it compensates, in a great degree, for the want of others, by the force and melody of its voice.

Among the other land-birds, are rails about the size of a pigeon, of a variegated grey colour; a black sort with reddish eyes; large violet coots, with red bald crowns; two sorts of fly-catchers; a small swallow; and three sorts of pigeons.

Of water-fowl, are the ducks seen at Annamooka; tropic birds; blue and white herons; noddies; white terns; a new species of a leaden colour; a small bluish curlew; and a large spotted plover.

Among the animals of the reptile, or insect tribe, are sea-snakes, (though often seen on shore) about three feet long, with alternate black and white circles; some scorpions, and centipedes: also green guanoes, about eighteen inches long, and two smaller sorts. Here are some beautiful moths and butterflies, and some very large spiders; together with others, making, in the whole, about fifty different sorts of insects.

Though the sea abounds with fish, the variety is less than might be imagined: those in the greatest plenty are mullets, silver fish, old wives, parrot fish, soles, leather jackets, albicores, bonnetos, eels like those about Palmerston's Island, rays, a sort of pike, and some devil fish.

There are an endless variety of shell fish about the reefs and shoals; among which are the hammer

mer oyster; a large indentated oyster, and many others; but none of the common sort; a gigantic cockle; panamas; cones; pearl-shell oysters, &c. Also several sorts of sea-eggs; many curious star-fish; crabs; cray-fish, &c. and several sorts of sponge.

---

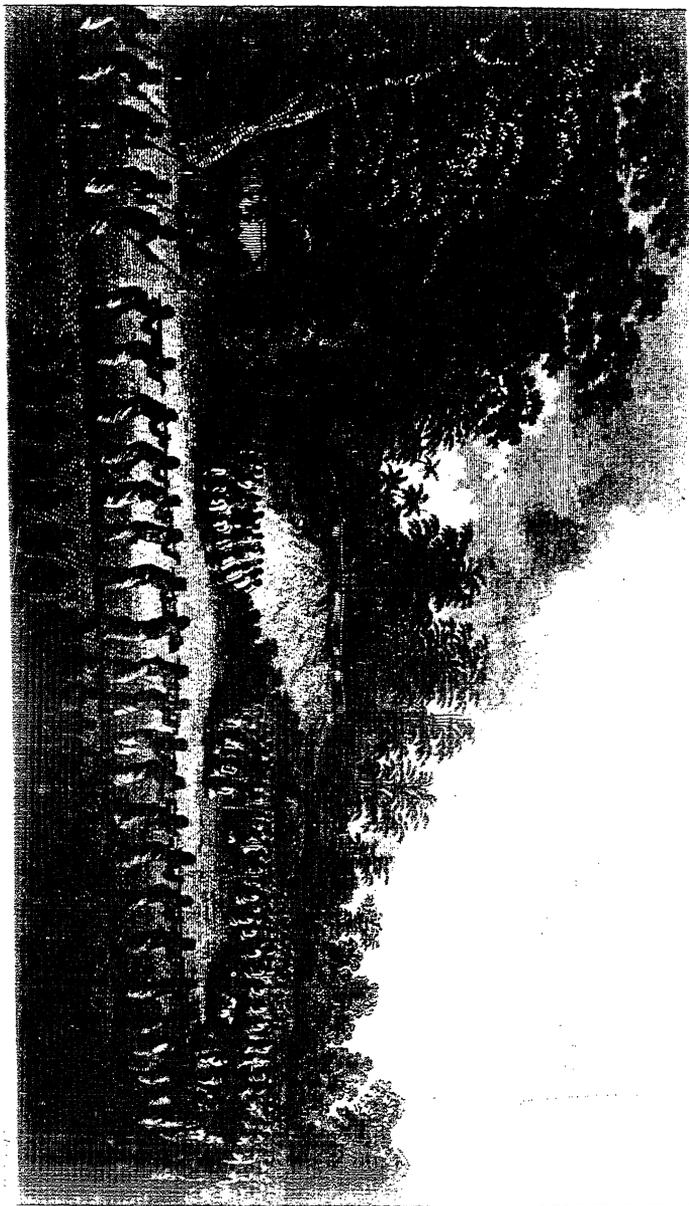
### C H A P. IX.

*Strange Solemnity at Mooa, called Natche, in Honour of the King's Son—Description of many extraordinary Processions and Ceremonies during the first Day—Manner of supping and spending the Evening at the King's House—Description of the second Day's Ceremony—Captain Cook ventures himself in the Midst of the Assembly—His Reception there—Arrival at Eooa—Some Account of that Island—Weigh Anchor, and turn through the Channel.*

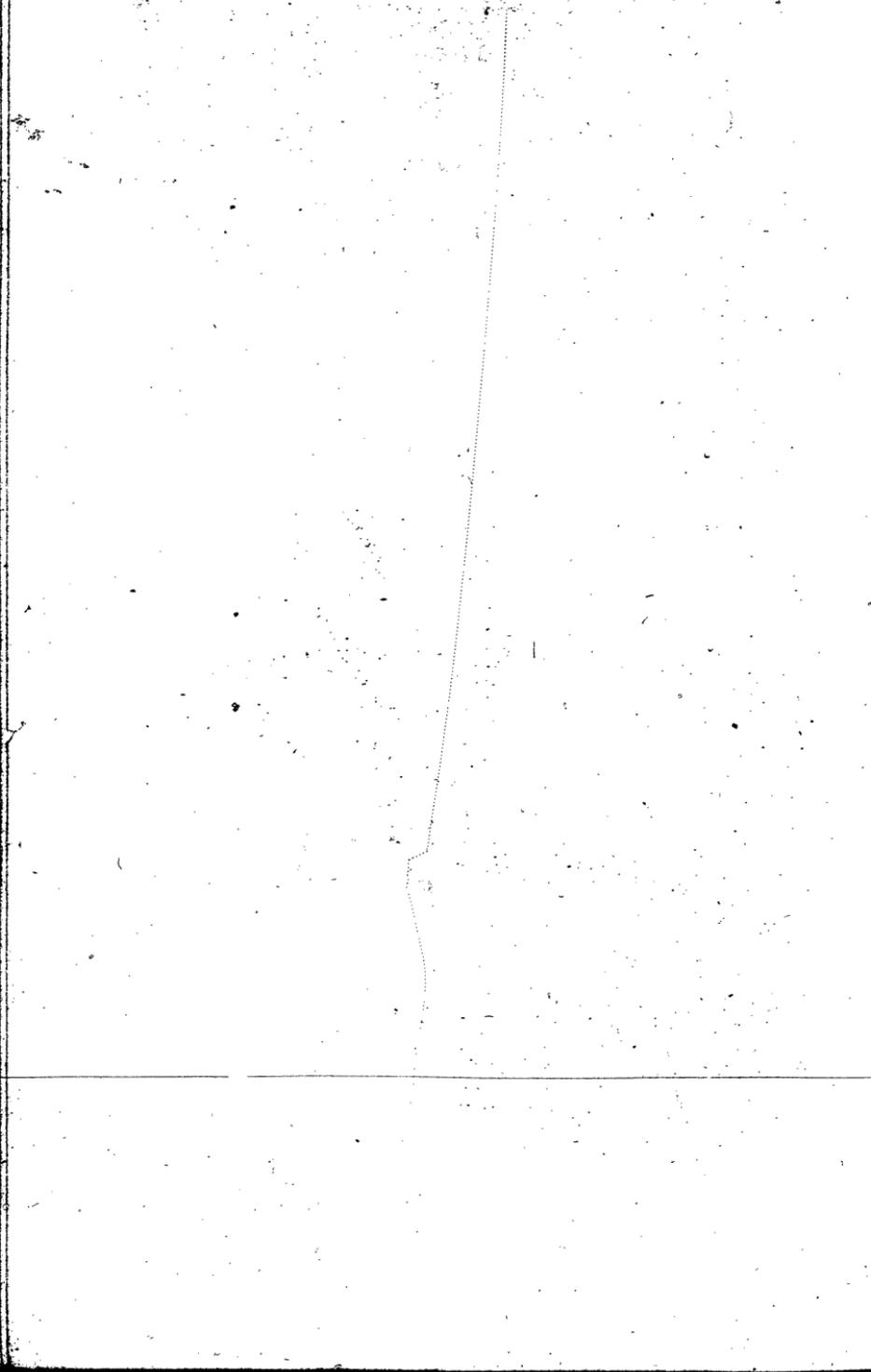
**T**HOUGH we were now ready to sail, we had not sufficient day-light to turn through the narrows; the morning flood falling out too early, and the evening flood too late. We were therefore under a necessity of waiting two or three days, unless we should be fortunate enough to have a leading wind.

This

*Cook's Tropic-Birds*



*THESE BIRDS ARE FOUND IN THE MOUNTAINS OF THE ISLANDS OF THE PACIFIC OCEAN.*



This delay gave us an opportunity to be present at a public solemnity, to which the king had invited us, and which was to be performed on the 8th. He and all the people of consequence repaired to Mooa on the 7th; where the solemnity was to be exhibited. Several of us followed them the next morning: Poulaho had informed us, that his son was now to be initiated into certain privileges; one of which was, that of eating with his father; an honour he had not hitherto enjoyed:

About eight o'clock in the morning we arrived at Mooa, where we found the king, with a number of attendants sitting before him, within a small dirty enclosure. They were, as usual, busied in preparing a bowl of *kava*. As this was not liquor for us, we went to pay a visit to some of our friends, and to observe what preparations were making for the ceremony, which was soon expected to begin:

About ten o'clock, the people assembled in a large area before the *malae*, or great house. At the end of a road, opening into this area, stood several men with spears and clubs, incessantly reciting short sentences, in mournful accents, which conveyed an idea of distress. This was continued about an hour; during which time, many people came down the road, each having a yam tied to the middle of a pole, which they laid down before those who continued repeating

the sentences. At length, the king and prince arrived, and seated themselves upon the area; and we were requested to sit down by them, to take off our hats, and to untie our hair. The bearers of the yams having all entered, each pole was taken up between two men, who carried it over their shoulders. They afterwards formed themselves into companies, of ten or twelve each, and marched across the place, with a rapid pace, each company headed by a man who had a club or spear, and defended, on the right, by several others, armed with different weapons. About two hundred and fifty persons walked in the procession, which was closed by a man carrying on a perch a living pigeon.

Omai was desired by Captain Cook to ask the chief where the yams were to be carried, with so much solemnity; but he seemed unwilling to give us the information we required; some of us, therefore, followed the procession, seemingly contrary to his inclination.

They stopped before a *morai* or *fiatooka* of one houte standing upon a mount, about a quarter of a mile from where they first assembled. Here they deposited the yams, and gathered them into bundles; but for what purpose, we could not possibly learn. Our presence seeming to give them offence or uneasiness, we quitted them, and returned to Poulaho, who advised us to amuse ourselves by walking about, as nothing would be done

done for a considerable time. The fear of losing the sight of any part of the ceremony, prevented our being long absent. When we returned to the king, he desired Captain Cook to order the boat's crew not to presume to stir from the boat, for every thing would, very soon, be *taboo*; and if any of our people, or of their own, should be seen walking about, they would certainly be knocked down with clubs; nay, *mated*, that is, killed. He also informed us, that we could not be present at the ceremony; but that we should be placed in such a situation, as to be able to see every thing that passed. Our dress was particularly objected to, and we were told, that, to qualify us to be present, we must be naked as low as the breast, and our hats must be taken off, and our hair untied. Omai readily agreed to conform to these requisites, and immediately began to strip; but other objections were then started, and he was excluded equally with ourselves.

Not relishing this restriction, the Captain stole out, to see what might now be going forward. Very few people, however, were to be seen, except those who were dressed to attend the ceremony; some having in their hands small poles, about four feet in length, to the under part of which were fastened two or three other small sticks, about six inches long. These men were going towards the *morai*. Captain Cook took the same

road, and was frequently stopped by them, all crying out *taboo*. However, he ventured to go forward till he came in sight of the *morai*, and of the people sitting before it. He was now strongly urged to go back, and, not knowing what might be the consequence of a refusal, he complied. He had observed, that those who carried the poles, passed the *morai*; and guessing, from this circumstance, that something was transacting beyond it, he had some thoughts of advancing, by making a round for this purpose; but he was so narrowly observed by three men, that he had no opportunity of putting his design in execution. In order to shake off these fellows, he returned to the *malae*, where he had parted from the king, and afterwards made an elopement a second time; but he instantly met with the same three men, who had doubtless received instructions to watch him. He paid no attention to them, till he came within sight of the king's principal *fiatooka* or *morai*; before which a great number of people were sitting, being those whom he had just before seen pass by the other *morai*, from which this was but a little distant. Seeing that he could observe the proceedings of this company from the king's plantation, he repaired thither, accompanied by several of his people.

The number of persons at the *fiatooka*, continued increasing for some time; and at length, they quitted their sitting posture, and marched off

off in procession. They walked in pairs, every pair carrying, between them, one of the small poles on their shoulders. We were informed, that the small pieces of sticks, fastened to the poles, were yams; it is therefore probable, that they were meant to represent this root emblematically. The hindmost man of each couple placed one of his hands to the middle of the pole, as if it were not strong enough to carry the weight that hung to it, and under which they all seemed to bend, as they proceeded. This procession consisted of one hundred and eight pairs, and principally men of rank.

Having seen them all pass, we repaired to Poulaho's house, and saw him going out. We were not permitted to follow him; but were immediately conducted to the place allotted to us, behind a fence adjoining to the area of the *fiatooka* where the yams had been deposited in the morning.

Arriving at our station, we saw two or three hundred people, sitting on the grass, near the end of the road opening into the area of the *morai*; and others were continually joining them. At length, arrived a few men, each carrying some small poles and branches, or leaves of the coconut-tree. As soon as they appeared, an old man seated himself in the road, and pronounced a long oration in a serious majestic tone. He then retired, and the others advancing to the middle

of the area, began to erect a small shed or hut; employing, for that purpose, the materials already mentioned. Their work being finished, they all squatted down, for a moment, before it, then rose up, and joined the rest of the company. Poulaho's son arrived soon after, preceded by four or five men. After them appeared about twelve or fourteen women of the first rank, advancing slowly in pairs, each pair carrying between them a narrow piece of white cloth, about two or three yards in length. They approached the prince, squatted down before him, and wrapped some of the pieces of the cloth round his body; they then rose up, and retired in the same order, to some distance on his left, where they seated themselves. Poulaho now made his appearance, preceded by four men, walking two and two abreast, and sat down on his son's left hand, at a small distance from him. The young prince then quitted his first position, and seated himself under the shed, with his attendants; many others placed themselves on the grass before this royal canopy. The prince sat facing the people, with his back to the *morai*. Three companies, of about ten or a dozen men in each, started up from among the crowd, soon after each other, and, running hastily to the opposite side, sat down for a few seconds; and then returned, in the same manner, to their former stations. To them succeeded two men, each hav-

ing

ing a small green branch in his hand, who rose and advanced towards the prince, sitting down, for a few seconds, three different times, as they approached; and retired in the same manner, inclining their branches to each other as they sat. Afterwards two others repeated the same ceremony.

The grand procession, which marched from the other *morai*, now began to come in. As they entered the area, they proceeded to the right of the shed, and, having prostrated themselves on the grass, deposited their pretended heavy burthens (the poles), and faced round to the prince. They then rose up, and retired in the same order, closing their hands with the most serious aspect, and seated themselves along the front of the area. While this numerous band were entering, and depositing their poles, three men, who sat with the prince, continued pronouncing separate sentences, in a mournful melancholy tone.

A profound silence then ensued for a short time, after which a man who sat in the front of the area, began a kind of oration, during which, at several different times, he broke one of the poles which had been brought in. Having concluded his oration, the people, sitting before the shed, separated, to make a lane, through which the prince and his attendants passed, and the assembly closed.

Satisfied with what they had already seen, some of our party now returned to the ships; but Captain Cook, and some more of the officers, remained at Mooa, to see the conclusion of the solemnity, which was not to be till the day following. The small poles, which had been brought by those who walked in procession, being left on the ground, after the crowd had dispersed, the Commodore examined them, and found that, to the middle of each, two or three small sticks were tied, as has been related. They were probably intended as only artificial representations of small yams.

Our supper, consisting of fish and yams, was got ready about seven o'clock. The king supped with us, and drank so freely of brandy and water, that he retired to bed with a sufficient dose. We continued the whole night in the same house with him and his attendants.

All, except Poulaho himself, rose at day-break; soon after which, a woman, one of those who generally attended upon the chief, came in, and, sitting down by him, immediately began the same operation which had been practised upon Futtafaihe, tapping or beating gently, with her clinched fists, on his thighs. This, instead of adding to his repose, had the contrary effect, and he awoke.

Captain Cook and Omai now paid a visit to the prince, who had parted from us early the  
pre-

preceding evening; for he did not lodge with the king, but in apartments of his own, at some distance from his father's house. We found him with a circle of boys, about his own age, sitting before him; and an old man and woman. There were others, of both sexes, employed about their necessary affairs, who, probably, belonged to his household.

We then returned to the king, who had a crowded levee before him, consisting principally of old men. While a bowl of *kava* was preparing, a baked hog and yams, smoking hot, were introduced; the greatest part of which fell to our share, for these people, especially the *kava* drinkers, eat very little in a morning.

We afterwards walked out, and visited several other chiefs; all of whom were taking their morning draught, or they had already taken it. Returning to the king, we found him asleep in a retired hut, with two women tapping or striking on his breech. About eleven o'clock he arose again, and ate some fish and yams, and again lay down to sleep. We now left him, and waited on the prince, with a present of cloth, beads, and other articles. There was a sufficient quantity of cloth to make him a complete suit, and he was immediately clad in his new habiliments. Proud of his dress, he first went to exhibit himself to his father, and then conducted Captain Cook to his mother, with whom were  
about

about a dozen other women of a very respectable appearance. Here the prince changed his apparel, and made Captain Cook a present of two pieces of the cloth which had been manufactured in the island.

It was now about noon, when, by appointment, the Captain repaired to the palace to dinner; which was soon after served up, and consisted of two pigs and some yams. The drowsy monarch was roused to partake of what he had appointed for our entertainment. Two mullets, and some shell-fish, were introduced, as if intended for his separate portion. But he added it to our fare, sat down with us, and made a very hearty meal.

Dinner being over, we were informed that the ceremony would soon begin, and were strictly enjoined not to venture out. The Commodore had resolved, however, to peep no longer from behind the curtain, but, if possible, to mix with the actors themselves. With this view he walked towards the *morai*, the scene of the solemnity. He was frequently desired to return, but he paid no regard to the admonitions he received, and was permitted to pass on. When arrived at the *morai*, he saw a number of men seated on the side of the area. A few were also sitting on the opposite side, and two men in the middle, with their faces turned to the *morai*. When Captain Cook had got into the midst of the first company,

pany, he was desired to sit down, which he accordingly did. Where he sat, there were lying a number of small bundles, composed of coconut leaves, and fastened to sticks made into the form of hand-barrows. All the information he could get concerning them was, that they were *taboo*. From time to time, one or another of the company turned to those who were coming to join us, and made a short speech, in which we remarked, that the word *arekee* (king) was generally mentioned. Something was said by one man that produced loud bursts of laughter from all around; others, of the speakers, were also much applauded. The Captain was frequently desired to leave the place; but, at length, finding him determined to stay, they requested him to uncover his shoulders as theirs were. This he readily complied with, and then they no longer seemed uneasy at his presence.

The prince, the women, and the king, at length appeared, as they had done the preceding day. The prince being placed under the shed, two men, each with a piece of mat, came, repeating something in a very serious strain, and put them about him. The people now began their operations, and different companies ran backward and forward across the area, as in the former day. Presently afterwards, the two men, in the middle of the area, made a short speech, and then the whole company rose up, and placed them-

themselves before the shed in which the prince, and three or four men, were seated. One of the company, who seemed very desirous of obliging Captain Cook, procured him such a situation, that if he could have made use of his eyes, nothing could have escaped him. But it was necessary to have a demure countenance and downcast looks.

The procession soon after arrived, as on the preceding day; a pole, with a cocoa-nut leaf plaited round the middle of it, being carried on the shoulders of every two persons. These were deposited with the same ceremonies as on the day before. After this succeeded another procession, composed of men who brought baskets, made of palm-leaves, such as are generally used by this people to carry provisions in. A third procession followed, in which a variety of small fish, each placed at the end of a forked stick, were brought. An old man, who sat on the prince's right-hand, without the shed, received the baskets; each of which he kept in his hand, making a short speech or prayer; then laying that aside, he called for another, repeating the same kind of prayer; he proceeded in this manner till he had gone through the whole number of baskets. Two men, who, till this time, had in their hands green branches, and were seated on the left, received the fish one by one, as they were presented to them on the forked sticks. The  
first

first fish they laid down on their right, and the second on their left. The third being presented, a stoutish man, who was seated behind the other two, endeavoured to seize it, as did also the other two at the same time. Thus every fish was contended for; but the man behind, on account of his disadvantageous situation, got only pieces; for he never quitted his hold, till the fish was torn out of his hand. What the others got, were laid on the right and left. At last the person behind got possession of a whole fish, the other two not even touching it. Upon this, the word *mareeai*, (very good), was pronounced in a low voice throughout the whole crowd. It appeared, that he had now done all that was expected from him; for he did not contend for the other fish. The persons who brought in these baskets and fish, delivered them sitting; and in the same manner, the poles carried in the first procession, had been placed upon the ground. At the close of the last procession, there was some speaking or praying by different persons. Then, on a signal being given, we all rose up, ran several paces, and sat down, with our backs to the prince. The Commodore was requested not to look behind him; but he was not discouraged, by this injunction, from facing about. The prince had now turned his face to the *morai*, and from that moment he was admitted to the honour of eating with his father; and a piece of roast-

ed

ed yam was presented to each of them for that purpose.

Soon after, we all turned about, forming a kind of semicircle before the prince, and leaving an open space between us. Presently some men advanced towards us, two and two, bearing large poles upon their shoulders, waving their hands as they proceeded, and making a noise like singing. When they came near us, they made a shew of walking quick, without advancing a single step. Several men, armed with large sticks, immediately started from the crowd, and ran towards the new visiters, but they instantly made off, having thrown down the poles from their shoulders. The others attacked the poles, and having beat them most unmercifully, returned to their places. The former, as they ran off, gave the challenge used here in wrestling; and, in a short time, some lusty fellows came from the same quarter, repeating the challenge as they approached. These were resisted by a company, who arrived at that instant from the opposite side. Both parties, however, returned to their own quarter, after having paraded about the area for some minutes. Afterwards, for the space of half an hour, wrestling and boxing-matches succeeded. Speeches were then delivered by two men, who seated themselves before the prince, with which the solemnity ended, and the whole assembly broke up.

In vain did we endeavour to find out the purport of the solemnity, called *Natche*. All the answer we received to our enquiries, was *taboo*; which, as has been already observed, is applied to many things. There was a mysterious solemnity in the whole transaction; and from the manner of performing it, as well as the place where it was performed, it was evident, that there was a mixture of religion in the institution. Upon no occasion had they regarded our dress and deportment; but now it was required, that our hair should flow about our shoulders; that we should be uncovered to the waist; sit cross-legged; and have our hands locked together. It should be observed also, that none but the chief people, and those who were concerned in the ceremony, were admitted to assist in the celebration of it. All these circumstances evidently pointed out, that they supposed themselves acting under the inspection of a Supreme Being, upon this occasion.

From the above account of the present *natche*, it may be considered as merely figurative. The few yams which were seen the first day, could not be meant as a general contribution; and it was intimated to us, that they were a portion consecrated to the *Otooa*, or Divinity.

We were, however, informed that, in the space of three months, there would be represented a more important solemnity; on which occasion,

the tribute of Tongataboo, Hapae, Vavaoo, and all the other islands, would be brought to the chief, and more awfully confirmed, by sacrificing ten human victims from amongst the people. A horrid solemnity indeed! On our enquiring into the occasion of so barbarous a practice, we were informed, that it was a necessary part of the Natche; and that, if omitted, the Deity would destroy their king.

The day was far spent, before the breaking up of the assembly; and as we were at some distance from the ships, we were impatient to set out from Mœoa. Taking leave of Poulaho, he pressed us earnestly to stay till the next day, in order to be present at a funeral ceremony. The wife of Marcewagee, his mother-in-law, had lately died; and, on account of the natche, her corps had been carried on board a canoe in the *lagoon*. Poulaho told Captain Cook, that when he had paid the last offices to her, he would attend him to Eooa; but if he did not chuse to wait, that he would follow him thither. He would gladly have seen this ceremony, had not the tide been now favourable. The wind too, which had been very boisterous, was now moderate and settled. Besides, we were informed, that the funeral ceremonies would continue five days, which, as the ships lay in such a situation, that we could not get to sea at pleasure, was too long a time to stay. The Captain, however, assured the king, that if  
he

he did not immediately fail, he would visit him again the next day. Whereupon we all took leave of him, and arrived at our ships about eight o'clock in the evening.

While the Commodore was attending the *natche*, at *Mooa*, he ordered the horses, bull, and other cattle, to be brought thither, thinking they would be safer there, than at a place that would be, in a great measure, deserted, the moment after our departure. Besides, we had left with our friends here, a young English boar, and three young English sows. They were exceedingly desirous of them, naturally supposing that they would greatly improve their own breed, which is but small. Feenou also got two rabbits from us, a buck and a doe, from which young ones were produced before we sailed. If the cattle succeed, the acquisition to these islands will be great; and as *Tongataboo* is a fine level country, the horses will be extremely useful.

We weighed anchor on the 10th, about eight o'clock in the morning, and, with a steady gale, turned through the channel, between the small isles called *Makkahaa* and *Monooafai*. The flood, at first, set strong in our favour, till leading up to the *lagoon*, where the eastward flood meets that from the west. This, with the indraught of the *lagoon*, and of the shoals before it, occasions strong riplings and whirlpools. Besides these disadvantages, the depth of the chan-

nel exceeds the length of a cable; consequently there can be no anchorage, except close to the rocks, in forty and forty-five fathoms water, where a ship would be exposed to the whirlpools. The Captain, therefore, abandoned the design he had formed of coming to an anchor, when we were through the narrows, and afterwards of making an excursion to see the funeral. He rather chose to be absent from that ceremony, than to leave the ships in so dangerous a situation. We plied to windward, between the two tides, till it was near high water, without either gaining or losing an inch, when we suddenly got into the influence of the eastern tide, where we expected the ebb to run strong to the eastward in our favour. It proved, however, very inconsiderable. Convinced that we could not get to sea before it was dark, we anchored under the shore of Tongataboo, in forty-five fathoms water. The Discovery dropped anchor under our stern; but drove off the bank before the anchor took hold, and did not recover it till about midnight.

After remaining in this station till eleven o'clock the next day, we weighed, and plied to the eastward. At ten o'clock at night we weathered the east end of the island, and stretched away for Middleburg, or Eooa (as the inhabitants call it) where we anchored, about eight the next morning, in forty fathoms water; being nearly the same place  
where

where the Captain took his station in 1773; when he named it *English Road*.

As soon as we had anchored, Taofa the chief, and several of the natives, visited us on board, and seemed rejoiced at our arrival. This Taofa had been Captain Cook's *Tayo* when he was here in 1773, and therefore they were not strangers to each other. The Captain accompanied him on shore in search of fresh water, the procuring of which was the chief object that brought him to Eooa. He had heard at Tongataboo of a stream here, which ran from the hills into the sea; but this was not the case at present. He was conducted to a brackish spring, among rocks, between low and high water mark. When they perceived that we did not approve of this, we were shewn a little way into the island; where, in a deep chasm, we found some excellent water; which, though attended with some trouble, might be conveyed to the shore, by means of spouts or troughs, that might be provided for that purpose: but rather than undertake that tedious task, the Captain contented himself with the supply the ships had received at Tongataboo.

Before he returned on board, he began a traffic for hogs and yams. Of the former, we could not procure many; but of the latter, plenty. At this island we landed the ram and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, and committed them to the care of Taofa, who seemed delighted

with his charge. It was, perhaps, a fortunate circumstance that Mareewagee, to whom they had been given; as before related, slighted the present: as Eooa had no dogs upon it at present, it seemed to be a fitter place for the rearing of sheep than Tongataboo.

While we were lying at anchor, this island had a very different aspect from any that we had lately seen, and formed a most pleasing landscape. It is the highest of any we had seen since we had left New-Zealand, and from its top, which appears to be almost flat, declines gradually towards the sea. The other isles, which form this cluster, being level, the eye cannot discover any thing except the trees that cover them; but here the land, rising gently upwards, presents an extensive prospect, where groves of trees, in beautiful disorder, are interspersed at irregular distances. Near the shore, it is quite shaded with a variety of trees, among which are erected the habitations of the natives; and to the right of where we were stationed, was one of the most extensive groves of cocoa-palms that we had ever seen.

In the afternoon of the 13th, a party of us ascended the highest part of the island, a little to the right of our ships, to have a perfect view of the country. Having advanced about half way up, we crossed a deep valley, the bottom and sides of which were clothed with trees. We found plenty of coral till we approached the summits of

the

the highest hills; the soil near the top is, in general, a reddish clay; which, in many places, is very deep. On the most elevated part of the island we saw a round platform, supported by a wall of coral stones. Our conductors informed us, that this mount had been raised by the direction of their chief; and that they met there, occasionally, to drink *kava*. They called it *Etchee*; by which name an erection was distinguished which we had seen at Tongataboo. At a small distance from it was a spring of most excellent water; and, about a mile lower down, a stream, which, we were told, ran into the sea when the rains were copious. We also discovered water in several small holes; and supposed that plenty might be found, by digging.

From this elevation we had a complete view of the whole island, except a small part to the south. The south-east side, from which the hills we were now upon are not far distant, rises with great inequalities, immediately from the sea; so that the plains and meadows lie all on the north-west side; which being adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, form a most delightful landscape in every point of view. While Captain Cook was surveying this enchanting prospect, he enjoyed the pleasing idea, that some future navigators might, from the same eminence, behold these meadows stocked with cattle, brought by the ships of England; and that the completion of this

single benevolent purpose, exclusive of all other considerations, would sufficiently prove that our voyages had not been useless. We found, on this height, besides the plants common on the neighbouring isles, a species of *acrosticum*, *melastoma*, and fern-tree.

All, or most of the land on this island, we were told, belonged to the chiefs of Tongataboo; the inhabitants being only tenants, or vassals, to them. This seemed, indeed, to be the case at all the neighbouring isles, except Annamooka, where some of the chiefs seemed to act with some kind of independence. Omai, who was much esteemed by Feenou, and many others, was tempted with the offer of being appointed a chief of this island, if he would continue among them; and he seemed inclinable to have accepted the offer, had he not been advised to the contrary by Captain Cook, though not because he thought he would do better for himself in his native isle.

Returning from our country excursion, we heard that a party of the natives, in the quarter where our people traded, had struck one of their own people with a club, which fractured his skull, and afterwards broke his thigh with the same instrument. No signs of life were remaining, when he was carried to a neighbouring house, but, in a short time, he recovered a little. On our desiring to know the reason of such severity, we were informed, that he had been discovered in an  
inde-

indelicate situation with a woman who was *taboo'd*. We soon understood, however, that she was no otherwise *taboo'd* than by belonging to another person, who was superior in rank to her gallant. We discovered from this circumstance, how these people punish such infidelities. But the female sinner, as we were informed, has a much milder punishment for her misdemeanour, and only receives a remonstrance and a very slight beating.

Captain Cook, the next morning, planted a pine-apple, and sowed the seeds of melons, and other articles, in the chief's plantation. He had reason, indeed, to suppose, that his endeavours of this kind would not be fruitless; for a dish of turnips was, this day, served up at his dinner, which was the produce of the seeds he had left here in 1773.

The Captain having fixed upon the 15th for sailing, Taofa pressed him to stay a little longer, in order to receive a present which he had prepared for him. His entreaties, together with the daily expectation of receiving a visit from some of his friends at Tongataboo, induced him to defer his departure. The next day he received from the chief the present; consisting of two little heaps of yams, and a quantity of fruit, which seemed to be collected as at the other isles. On this occasion the greatest part of the inhabitants of the island had assembled; and, as we had many times experienced on such numerous meetings

among their neighbouring islanders, gave us no small trouble to prevent their pilfering. Cudgelling, wrestling, and boxing, were exhibited for our entertainment; and in the latter, combatants, of both sexes, engaged. The diversions were intended to have been finished with the *hōmai*, or night-dance; but an accident happened that either put a total stop to it, or, at least, prevented our staying on shore to see it. One of our people was surrounded by twenty or thirty of the natives, some of whom knocked him down, stripped him, and carried off all his clothes. Hearing of this, the Commodore seized two canoes, and a large hog; and insisted on the chief's not only causing the apparel to be restored, but also on the offenders being delivered up to him. Taofa seemed greatly concerned at what had happened, and took the necessary steps to satisfy him. The people who were assembled were so alarmed at this affair, that most of them immediately fled. However, when they were informed that the Captain meant to take no other measures to revenge the insult, they returned. One of the delinquents was soon delivered up to him, and a shirt and a pair of trowsers restored. The remainder of the stolen goods not coming in before the evening, the Commodore was obliged to leave them, in order to go aboard; the sea running so high, that it was extremely difficult for the boats to get out of the creek even with day-light, and would be attended

attended with much more danger in the dark. He came ashore again the next morning, bringing with him a present for Taoofa, in return for what he had received from him. Being early, there were but few people at the landing-place, and even those few not without their fears and apprehensions; but on the Captain's desiring Omai to assure them, that we did not mean to injure them; and having restored the canoes, and released the offender, who had been delivered up to him, they resumed their usual cheerfulness, and a large circle was presently formed, in which the chief and the principal men of the island took their respective places.

The remainder of the clothes were at length brought in, but, having been torn off the man's back by pieces, they were not thought worth carrying on board. Taoofa shared the present he had received, with three or four other chiefs, reserving a small part only for himself. This donation so far exceeded their expectation, that a venerable old chief told the Captain, they were not deserving of it, considering how little he had received from them, and the ill treatment one of his people had met with. Captain Cook continued with them, till they had emptied their bowl of *kava*; and then, after paying for the hog, which he had taken the day before, returned on board, in company with Taoofa, and one of Poulaho's servants, by whom he sent a piece of bar iron,

iron, as a parting mark of his esteem for that chief, that being as valuable a present as any he could possibly make.

We weighed soon after, and with a light breeze at south-east, stood out to sea, when Taoofa, and some other natives, left us. We found, on heaving up the anchor, that the cable had been much injured by the rocks. Besides this, we experienced, that a most astonishing swell rolls in there from the south-west. Presently we observed a sailing canoe entering the creek before which we had anchored our ships. A few hours after, a small canoe, conducted by four men, came off to us: for, having but very little wind, we were still at no considerable distance from the land. We were informed, by these men, that the sailing canoe, which we had seen arrive, had brought directions to the people of Eooa, to furnish us with hogs; and that the king, and other chiefs, would be with us in the space of two or three days. They requested, therefore, that we would return to our former station. There was no reason to doubt the truth of this information; but, being now clear of the land, it was not a sufficient inducement to bring us back; especially, as we had, already, a sufficient stock of fresh provisions to last us in our passage to Otaheite. Besides Taoofa's present, we received a large quantity of yams at Eooa, in exchange for nails, &c. and added considerably to our supply of hogs.

Finding

Finding that we would not return, these people left us in the evening, as did some others, who had come off in two canoes, with cocoa-nuts and shaddocks, to barter for what they could get; their eagerness to possess more of our commodities, inducing them to follow us out to sea, and to continue their intercourse with us even to the last moment.

---

## C H A P. X.

*Quit the Friendly Islands with Regret—Time not misemployed in visiting the Friendly Islands—Variety of Refreshments to be procured there—Number of Islands, among which are Keppel's and Boscawen's Islands—Account of Vavaoo, Hamoa, and Feejee—Method of calculating Distances by Time—Omai incapable of giving exact Information—Persons of the Inhabitants described—Their Diseases—Character—Manner of wearing the Hair in both Sexes—Of puncturing and painting their Bodies—Their Habits—Ornaments, &c.*

**W**E have now taken leave of the Friendly Islands, and their inhabitants, after a cordial intercourse with the latter for between two and three months. Some differences, indeed, occasi-

occasionally happen, on account of their natural propensity to thieving, though too frequently encouraged by the negligence and inattention of our people. These differences, however, were never attended with any fatal consequences; and few, belonging to our ships, parted from their friends without some regret. The time we continued here was not thrown away; and as we, in a great measure, subsisted upon the produce of the islands, we expended very little of our sea provisions. We carried with us a sufficient quantity of refreshments, to supply us till our arrival at another station, where we could again recruit. The Commodore rejoiced at having had an opportunity of serving these poor people, by leaving some useful animals among them; and that those intended for Otaheite, had acquired fresh strength in the pastures of Tongataboo. The advantages we received by touching here, were great, and they were received without retarding the prosecution of our great object; the season for proceeding to the north being lost, before we formed the resolution of visiting these islands.

Iron tools are the best articles for traffic here. Axes, hatchets, nails of all sizes, knives, raps, and files, are much demanded. Red cloth, white and coloured linen, looking-glasses and beads, are also in great estimation; but, of the latter, those which are blue are preferred to all others, especially the white ones. A hog might, at any time,

time, be purchased, by a string of large blue beads: it should, nevertheless, be observed, that articles, merely ornamental, may be highly esteemed at one time, and disregarded at another. On our first arrival at Annamooka, the people were unwilling to take them in exchange for fruit; but, when Feenou arrived, his approbation of them brought them into vogue, and stamped them with the value above-mentioned.

In return for the commodities just enumerated, all the refreshments that the islands produce may be procured. The yams, produced by the Friendly Islands, are excellent, and, when grown to perfection, preserve well at sea: but their pork, plantains, and bread-fruit, are inferior in quality to the same articles at Otaheite.

Good water is scarce in these islands. It may be found, indeed, in all of them, but not to serve the purposes of navigators; for either the situations are too inconvenient, or the quantities too inconsiderable. Whilst we lay at anchor under Kotoo, we were informed, that there was a stream of water at Kao, which ran from the mountains into the sea, on the south-west side of the island. This intelligence may probably deserve the attention of future navigators.

We must include, under the denomination of Friendly Islands, not only the group at Hapae, but also those which have been discovered to the north, nearly under the same meridian, as well as  
some

some others under the dominion of Tongataboo; which is the capital, and seat of government.

From the best information we could receive, this archipelago is very extensive. One of the natives enumerated one hundred and fifty islands: and Mr. Anderson procured all their names. Sixty-one of them are marked upon our chart of the Friendly Islands, and upon the sketch of the harbour of Tongataboo. Keppel's and Boscawen's Islands, two of Captain Wallis's discoveries in 1765, are doubtless comprehended in Mr. Anderson's list.

But the most considerable islands that we heard of in this neighbourhood, are Hamoa, Vavaoo, and Feejee; each of which is larger than Tongataboo; but it does not appear that any European has ever yet seen any one of them.

Hamoa lies two days sail north-west from Vavaoo. It is said to be the largest of all their islands; affords harbours and good water, and produces, in abundance, all the articles of refreshment that are found at the places we visited. Poulaho frequently resides upon this island; and the people here are in high estimation at Tongataboo.

Feejee lies in the direction of north-west by west, about three days sail from Tongataboo. It abounds with hogs, dogs, fowls, and such fruits and roots as are to be found in any of the others, and is much larger than Tongataboo; but not  
sub-

subject to its dominion, as the other islands of this archipelago are. Feejee and Tongataboo often engage in war against each other; and the inhabitants of the latter are often so much afraid of this enemy, that they bend the body forward, and cover the face with their hands, to express the sense of their own inferiority to the Feejee men. This is, indeed, no matter of surprize, for those of Feejee have rendered themselves formidable, by their dexterity in the use of bows and slings; but more so, by their savage practice of eating such of their enemies as they kill in battle.

It has been insisted on, that extreme hunger first occasioned men to feed on human flesh; but where could be the inducement for the Feejee people to continue the practice in the midst of plenty? It is held in detestation by the inhabitants of Tongataboo, who seem to cultivate the friendship of their savage neighbours of Feejee through fear; though they, occasionally, venture to skirmish with them on their own territory, and carry off large quantities of red feathers as trophies. When a profound peace reigns between the two islands, they have frequent intercourse together; though, it is probable, they have not long been known to each other; or, it might be supposed that Tongataboo, and its neighbouring islands, would, before this time, have been supplied with a breed of dogs, which are numerous

at Feejee, and were not introduced at Tongataboo, when Captain Cook first visited it, in 1773.

The colour of the natives of Feejee was, at least, a shade darker than that of the inhabitants of the other Friendly Islands. We saw one of the natives of Feejee, who had his left ear slit, and the lobe so stretched, that it almost extended to his shoulder; which singularity had been observed by Captain Cook at other islands of the South Sea, during his second voyage. The Feejee men were much revered here; not only on account of their power and cruelty in war, but also for their ingenuity; for they greatly excel the inhabitants of Tongataboo in workmanship. Specimens were shewn us of their clubs and spears, which were ingeniously carved. We were also shewn some of their beautifully chequered cloth, variegated mats, earthen pots, and other articles, all of which displayed a superiority in the execution.

Feejee, as has been already mentioned, is three days sail from Tongataboo; these people having no other method of discovering the distance from island to island, but by mentioning the time required for the voyage in one of their canoes. That this might be ascertained with some precision, Captain Cook failed in one of their canoes, and by repeated trials with the log, found that she went close hauled, in a gentle gale, seven miles in an hour. He supposed from this, that  
they

they will fail, with such breezes as in general blow in their seas, seven or eight miles an hour on an average. Each day, however, is not to be reckoned at twenty-four hours; for when they talk of one day's sail, they mean no more than from the morning to the evening, or ten or twelve hours at the most. From the morning of the first day till the evening of the second, is, with them, two days sail. In the day, they are guided by the sun; and, in the night, by stars. When these are obscured, they can only have recourse to the points from whence the winds and waves came upon the vessel. If, at that time, the winds and the waves should shift, they are quite bewildered, often missing their intended port, and being never heard of more. The story of Omai's countrymen, who were driven to Wa-teoo, convinces us, however, that those who are not heard of, are not always lost.

The harbour and anchoring-place of Tongataboo, is superior to any we have met with among these islands, as well from its great security, as its capacity, and goodness of bottom. The risk we ran in entering it from the north, should caution every future commander from attempting that passage again, especially with a ship of burden, since that, by which we left it, may be pursued with greater ease and safety.

Though the harbour of Tongataboo has the preference, its water is exceeded in goodness, by

that at Annamooka, and yet this cannot be reckoned good. Tolerable water may, nevertheless, be procured, by digging holes near the side of the pond. Besides, Annamooka being nearly in the centre of the group, is the best situated for procuring refreshments from the others. There is a creek in the reef on the north side of the island, wherein two or three ships may lie securely.

Those who are desirous of having a more particular description of the Friendly Islands, must have recourse to the chart, where every thing is delineated as accurately as circumstances would permit. To the same chart, recourse may also be had for tracing the several stations of the ships, and their route.

What may have been here omitted, concerning the geography of these islands, will be found in the history of Captain Cook's last voyage \*; to which narrative the reader is referred †, for such particulars as he had then observed. At present, we shall only relate such interesting circumstances, as either were omitted in that account, or were imperfectly and incorrectly represented.

After living among them between two and three months, it is reasonable to expect, that we should be able to clear up every difficulty, and to give a tolerably good account of their manners, cus-

\* Cook's Voyage, Vol. I. p. 211, 213.  
p. 213, 225.

† Ibid.

roms, and institutions, civil as well as religious; particularly as we had a person with us, who, by understanding their language as well as ours, might be enabled to act as an interpreter. But Omai was not qualified for that task. Unless we had before us the object or thing, concerning which we wanted information, we found it difficult to obtain a competent knowledge from his explanations. Omai was certainly more liable to make mistakes than we were: for, having no curiosity, he never troubled himself with making remarks; and when he attempted to explain matters to us, his ideas were apparently so limited, and, probably, differed so much from ours, that his confused accounts, instead of instructing, often only perplexed us. Besides, we could seldom find a person, among the natives, who had both the ability and inclination to give us the information we required. And many of them, we observed, appeared offended at being asked, what they, perhaps, deemed frivolous questions. At Tongataboo, where we continued the longest, our situation was likewise unfavourable; being in a part of the country, where, except fishers, there were but few inhabitants. With our visitors, as well as with those we visited, it was always holiday; so that we could not observe, what was really the domestic way of living among the natives. That we could not, therefore, in this situation, bring away satisfactory accounts of many

T 2

things,

things, is not the least surprizing. Some of us, indeed, endeavoured, by diligent observation, to remedy those disadvantages; and we are indebted to Mr. Anderson, for a considerable share of what is related in this and the following chapter.

The Friendly Islanders seldom exceed the common stature, (though some here were above six feet in height) and are strong and well proportioned. Their shoulders are, in general, broad; and we saw several who were really handsome, though their muscular disposition rather conveyed the idea of strength than of beauty. Their features are so various, that, unless it be by a fullness at the point of the nose, which is common, it is impossible to fix any general likeness by which to characterize them. On the other hand, many genuine Roman noses, and hundreds of European faces, were seen amongst them. They have good eyes and teeth; but the latter are neither so well set, nor so remarkably white, as among the Indian nations. Few of them, however, have that uncommon thickness about the lips, so frequent in other islands.

The women are less distinguished from the men by their features, than by their general form, which seems destitute of that strong fleshy firmness that appears in the latter. Though the features of some are very delicate, and a true index of their sex, laying claim to a considerable share of beauty and expression, yet the rule is not, by  
any

any means, so general, as in many other countries. This is generally, however, the most exceptionable part; for the bodies of most of the females are usually well proportioned; and some are absolutely perfect models of a beautiful figure. But the extraordinary smallness and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with any in Europe, seems to be the most remarkable distinction in the women.

The general colour among the natives is a cast deeper than the copper brown; but several of both sexes have a true olive complexion. Some of the women are even much fairer; owing, perhaps, to their being less exposed to the sun; as a tendency to corpulence, in some of the principal people, seems to be the natural consequence of a more indolent life: a softer and clearer skin is also most frequently observed among the latter. Among the major part of the people, the skin is generally of a dull hue, with some degree of roughness, particularly the parts that are uncovered, occasioned, perhaps, by some cutaneous disease. We saw a man at Hapae, perfectly white, and a child equally so at Annamooka. In all black nations, such phænomena are found, but their colour, it is imagined, proceeds from a disease.

Upon the whole, however, few natural defects or deformities are to be seen among them; though we observed two or three with their feet bent in-

wards. Neither are they exempt from some diseases. Vast numbers of them are affected with the tetter or ringworm, which leaves whitish serpentine marks behind it. But they have another disease of a more mischievous consequence, which is also very frequent, and appears on every part of the body, in large broad ulcers, discharging a thin, clear pus, some of which had a very virulent appearance, particularly on the face. Some, however, appeared to be cured of it, and others mending; but it was generally attended with the loss of the nose, or a considerable part of it. It being certainly known, and even acknowledged by themselves, that the natives were subject to this disease before they were visited by the English, it cannot be the effect of venereal contagion, notwithstanding the similarity of the symptoms; unless we adopt a supposition, that the venereal disorder was not introduced here by our people, in 1773. It certainly was amongst them at this time; for, soon after we arrived there, some of our people received the infection; and Captain Cook had the mortification to learn from thence, that all the care he took in 1773, to prevent the communication of this dreadful disease, had proved ineffectual. They do not seem, however, to regard it much; and, as we did not see many instances of its destroying effects, perhaps the climate, and the way of living of these people, may abate its virulence. Two other diseases are  
common

common among them; one of which is a firm swelling, which affects the legs and arms; the other is a tumour in the testicles, which sometimes exceed the size of the two fists. In other respects, they are remarkably healthy, not a single person having, during our stay, been confined to the house by any kind of sickness. Their strength and activity are, in every respect, answerable to their muscular appearance; and they exert both, in such a manner, as to prove, that they are, as yet, little debilitated by the numerous diseases that are the natural consequence of indolence.

The graceful mien and firmness of step with which they walk, are obvious proofs of their personal accomplishments. They consider this as a thing so necessary to be acquired, that their laughter was excited when they saw us frequently stumbling upon the roots of trees, or other inequalities, in walking.

The mildness or good-nature which they abundantly possess, is depicted on their countenances, which are totally free from that savage keenness, which always marks the nations that are in a barbarous state. We might almost be induced to suppose, that they had been reared under the severest restrictions, to acquire so settled an aspect, such a command of their passions, and such a steadiness of conduct. At the same time, they are open, chearful, and good-humoured; though, in the presence of their chiefs, they sometimes

assume a degree of gravity, which has the appearance of reserve.

Their pacific disposition is thoroughly evinced, from their friendly reception of all strangers. Instead of attacking them openly, or clandestinely, they have never appeared, in the smallest degree, hostile; but, like the most civilized nations, have even courted an intercourse with their visitors, by bartering; a medium which unites all nations in a degree of friendship. So perfectly do they understand barter, that, at first, we supposed they had acquired the knowledge of it by trading with the neighbouring islands; but it afterwards appeared, that they had hardly any traffic, except with Feejee. No nation, perhaps, in the world, displayed, in their traffic, more honesty and less distrust. We safely permitted them to examine our goods; and they had the same implicit confidence in us. If either party became dissatisfied with his bargain, a re-exchange was made with mutual consent and satisfaction. They seem, upon the whole, to possess many of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind.

A propensity to thieving, seems to be the only defect to sully their fair character. Those of all ages, and both sexes, were addicted to it in an uncommon degree. It should be considered, however, that this exceptionable part of their conduct existed merely with respect to us; for, in their general intercourse with each other, thefts are  
not,

not, perhaps, more frequent than in other countries, where the dishonest practices of individuals should not authorize any indiscriminate censure on the people at large. Allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor islanders, whose minds we overpowered with the glare of new and captivating objects. Stealing, among civilized nations, denotes a character deeply stained with moral turpitude. But at the Friendly Islands, and others which we visited, the thefts committed by the natives, may have been occasioned by less culpable motives. They were stimulated solely by curiosity and desire to possess something new, and the property of a sort of people so different from themselves. And, perhaps, if a set of beings, seemingly as superior to us, as we appear to be to them, should make their appearance among us, it might be possible that our natural regard to justice would not be able to restrain many from being guilty of the same error. That this is the true motive for their propensity to this practice, is evident from their stealing every thing indiscriminately. The thieving disposition of these islanders, was the means, however, of affording us some information as to their ingenuity and their quickness of intellects. For their petty thefts were managed with much dexterity; and those of greater consequence, with a settled plan or scheme, adapted to the importance of the objects.

The

The hair of these islanders is, in general, thick, straight, and strong; though some have it bushy or frizzled. The natural colour appears to be black, but many of the men, and some of the women, stain it of a brown, or purple colour; and a few give it an orange cast. The first of these colours is produced by applying a sort of plaister of burnt coral mixed with water; the second, by the raspings of a reddish wood, mixed into a poultice, and laid over the hair; and the third is said to be the effect of *turmeric root*.

They are so whimsical in their fashions of wearing their hair, that it is difficult to say which is most in vogue. Some have none on one side of the head, while it remains long on the other side; some have only a part of it cut short; others have parted with the whole, except a single lock on one side. Some permit it to grow to its full length, without any of these mutilations. The women usually wear it short. The beards too are cut short; and both sexes strip the hair from their arm-pits. The men are stained with a deep blue colour from the middle of the belly, to half way down the thighs. This is effected with a flat bone instrument, full of fine teeth, which by a stroke of a bit of stick introduces the juice of *dooe dooe* into the skin, by which means indelible marks are made. Lines and figures are thus traced, which, in some, are very elegant. The women have only some small lines, thus imprinted,

ed, in the inside of their hands. As a mark of distinction, their kings are exempted from this custom. The men are not circumcised, but rather supercised; the operation consists in cutting off only a piece of the foreskin at the upper part, which is thus rendered incapable of ever covering the *glans*. They have no other aim in this operation, and only practise it from a notion of cleanliness.

The dress of both sexes is the same; consisting of a piece of cloth or matting, about two yards in breadth, and two yards and a half in length. It is double before, and, like a petticoat, hangs down to the middle of the leg. That part of the garment which is above the girdle, is plaited into several folds, which extended, is sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders. This, as to form, is the general dress; but the fine matting, and long pieces of cloth, are worn only by the superior class of people. The inferior sort are contented with small pieces, and, very often, have only a covering made of leaves of plants, or the *maro*, a narrow piece of cloth, or matting, like a sash. They pass this between the thighs and round the waist. It is seldom used but by the men. In their *baivas*, or grand entertainments, they have various dresses, which, though the same in form, are embellished more or less, with red feathers.

Both

Both men and women occasionally defend their faces from the sun with little bonnets, made of various sorts of materials.

The ornaments, worn by those of either sex, are the same. Those which are most common are necklaces, made of the fruit of the *pandanus*, and various sweet-smelling flowers, known by the general name of *kabulla*. Others consist of small shells, shark's teeth, the wing and leg-bones of birds, &c. all which are pendant upon the breast. In this manner, they often wear a polished mother-of-pearl shell, or a ring, on the upper part of the arm; rings of tortoise-shell on the fingers; and several of these, joined together; formed into bracelets on the wrists.

Two holes are perforated in the lobes of the ears, in which they wear cylindrical bits of ivory, of the length of three inches, introduced at one hole, and drawn out of the other; or bits of reed, filled with a yellow pigment. This appears to be a fine powder of *turmeric*, which the women rub all over their bodies, in the same manner as the European ladies use their dry rouge upon their cheeks.

Personal cleanliness is their delight, to produce which, they bathe frequently in the ponds. Though the water has an intolerable stench in most of them, they always prefer them to the sea; and they are so sensible that their skin is injured with salt water, that, when they are obliged

to

to bathe in the sea, they have fresh water poured over them to wash off its bad effects. They are extravagantly fond of cocoa-nut oil; a great quantity of which they pour upon their head and shoulders, and rub the body all over with a smaller quantity.

---

## CHAP. XI.

*Various Employments of the Women of the Friendly Islands—Occupations of the Men—Agriculture—Manner of building their Houses—Their Furniture—Canoes—Working-Tools—Cordage—Fishing-Tackle—Instruments of Music—Weapons—Vegetable and Animal Food—Methods of Cooking—Diversions—Marriage—Mourning Ceremonies—Custom of cutting off their little Finger—Their Deities—Sentiments concerning the Soul, and a future State—Their Fiatockas—Form of Government—Power of the Chiefs—Mode of paying Homage to the King—Taboo incurred by it—Precaution against Famine—Of the Tammabas—Language—Tides.*

**T**HE domestic life of these people is neither so laborious as to be disagreeable, nor so free from employment as to suffer them to degenerate

nerate into indolence. Their country has been so favoured by nature, that the first can scarcely occur; and their disposition appears to be a sufficient bar to the last. By this fortunate concurrence of circumstances, their necessary labour seems to yield, in its turn, to their amusements and recreations, which are never interrupted by the thoughts of being obliged to recur to business, till they are induced by satiety to wish for that transition. The employment of the women is not difficult; and is generally such as they can execute in the house. The making of cloth is entirely entrusted to their care; the process of which manufacture has been already described. Their cloth is of different degrees of fineness: the coarser kind does not receive the impression of any pattern: but, of the finer sort, they have various patterns, differently coloured. The cloth, in general, is able to resist water for some time; but that which has the strongest glaze, is the least liable to be penetrated by that fluid.

Another manufacture, which is also consigned to the women, is that of their mats, which excel those of most other countries, both with respect to their texture and their beauty. Of these mats there are seven or eight different sorts, which they either wear or sleep upon; and many are merely ornamental. The last are principally made from the tough, membraneous part of the stock of the plantain-tree; those that they wear, are generally

composed of the *pandanus*; and the coarser kind, on which they sleep, are formed from a plant called *evarra*. There are several other articles of less importance, that employ their females; as combs, of which they make great quantities; and small baskets made of the same substance as the mats, and others composed of the fibrous hulk of the cocoa-nut, either interwoven with beads, or plain; all which are finished with extraordinary neatness and taste.

The province of the men is, as might reasonably be expected, far more laborious and extensive than that of the other sex. Architecture, boat-building, agriculture, and fishing, are the principal objects of their care. As cultivated roots and fruits form their chief subsistence, they find it necessary to practise husbandry, which they have brought by their diligence to some degree of perfection. In planting yams and plantains, they dig small holes for their reception, and afterwards root up the surrounding grass. The instruments used by them for this purpose, are called *booo*; and are nothing more than stakes of various lengths, flattened and sharpened to an edge at one end; and the largest ones have a short piece fixed transversely, by means of which they press the implement into the ground with the foot. When they plant the two above-mentioned vegetables, they observe such particular exactness, that, whichever way you turn your eyes,

eyes, the rows present themselves complete and regular.

The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut-trees are dispersed about, without any order; and, when they have arrived at a certain height, give them little or no trouble. The same may be said of another large tree, which produces a roundish compressed nut, called *eeffee*; and of a smaller tree bearing an oval nut, with two or three triangular kernels. The *kappe* is, in general, planted regularly, and in large spots; but the *marwaba* is interspersed among other things, as are also the *yams* and *jeejee*. Sugar-cane is usually in small spots, closely crowded. The mulberry, of which the cloth is made, is kept very clean, and has a good space allowed for it. The *pandanus* is commonly planted in a row, close together, at the sides of the fields.

They display very little taste or ingenuity in the construction of their houses. Those of the lower class of people are wretched huts, scarce sufficient to shelter them from the weather. Those of the better sort are larger, as well as more commodious and comfortable. A house of a middling size is of the following dimensions, viz. about twelve feet in height, twenty in breadth, and thirty in length. Their houses are, properly speaking, thatched roofs or sheds, supported by rafters and posts. The floor is raised with earth smoothed, and covered with thick matting. Some  
of

of their habitations are open all round; but the major part of them are enclosed on the weather side with strong mats, or with branches of the cocoa-nut-tree, plaited or interwoven with each other. A thick mat, about three feet broad, bent into a semicircular form, and placed edgewise, with the ends touching the side of the house; encloses a sufficient space for the master and mistress to sleep in. The rest of the family sleep upon any part of the floor, the unmarried men and women lying apart from each other. If the family is large, there are little huts adjoining, in which the servants sleep. Their whole furniture consists of some wooden stools, which serve them for pillows; baskets of different sizes, in which they put their combs, fish-hooks, and tools; two or three wooden bowls, in which they make *kava*; some cocoa-nut shells, a few gourds, and a bundle or two of cloth.

They are very skilful in building their canoes; which, indeed, are the most perfect of their mechanical productions. The double ones are made sufficiently large to carry about fifty persons, and sail at a great rate. Upon them they generally fix a hut or shed, for the reception of the master and his family. They are made of the bread-fruit tree, and the workmanship is extremely neat. They appear on the outside as if they were composed of one solid piece; but, upon closer inspection, they are found to consist

of a great number of pieces, which fit each other exactly, and by means of a ledge on the inside are secured together with cocoa-nut line. The single canoes are furnished with an outrigger. The only tools which they make use of in the construction of these boats, are hatchets, or adzes, of a smooth black stone; augers, made of shark's teeth; and rasps, composed of the rough skin of a fish, fastened on flat pieces of wood. The same tools are all they have for other works, except shells, which serve them for knives. Their cordage is made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, which, though not above ten inches long, they plait about the size of a quill, to whatever length is required, and roll it up in balls; from which the ropes of a larger size are made, by twisting several of those together. Their fishing-lines are as strong and even as our best cord. Their small hooks consist entirely of pearl-shell; but the large ones are only covered with it on the back; and the points of both are, in general, of tortoise-shell. With the large hooks they catch albigores, and bonnetos, by putting them to a bamboo-rod, about twelve feet long, with a line of the same length. They have also numbers of small seines, some of which are of the most delicate texture.

Their musical reeds or pipes, which resemble the *syrinx* of the ancients, have eight or ten pieces placed parallel to each other, most of which are

of

of unequal lengths. Their flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about eighteen inches long, and are closed at both ends, having a hole near each end, and four others; two of which, and only one of the first, are used by them in playing. They close the left nostril with the thumb of the left-hand, and blow into the hole at one end with the other nostril. The fore-finger of the right-hand is applied to the lowest hole on the right, and the middle finger of the left, to the first hole on that side. In this manner, with only three notes, they produce a pleasing, though simple, music. Their *nassa*, or drum, has been already described.

Their warlike weapons are clubs, curiously ornamented, spears, and darts. They also make bows and arrows; but these are intended for amusement, such as shooting at birds, and not for the purposes of war. Their stools, or rather pillows, are about two feet long, but only four or five inches in height, and near four in breadth, inclining downwards towards the middle, with four strong legs and circular feet; the whole composed of brown or black wood, neatly polished, and sometimes inlaid with ivory. They likewise inlay with ivory the handles of fly-flaps; and, with a shark's tooth, shape bones into figures of men, birds, &c.

Their vegetable diet principally consists of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and yams.

Their chief articles of animal food are hogs, fish, and fowls; but the common people frequently eat rats. Their hogs, fowls, and turtle, however, seem to be only occasional dainties, reserved for persons of rank. Their food is, in general, dressed by baking, as at Otaheite; and they make, from different sorts of fruit, several dishes, which are very good. They sometimes boil their fish in the green leaves of the plantain-tree, which serve as a bag to hold both fish and water: having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon stones heated for the purpose: when they are sufficiently done, they not only eat the fish, but drink the liquor or soup. They are not very cleanly either in their cookery, or their manner of eating. Their usual drink at their meals is water, or cocoa-nut milk, the *kava* being only their morning beverage. The food that is served up to the chiefs, is generally laid upon plantain-leaves. The king, at his meals, was commonly attended upon by three or four of the natives, one of whom cut large pieces of the fish, or of the joint, another afterwards divided it into mouthfuls, and the rest stood by with cocoa-nuts, and whatever else he might happen to want. We never observed a large company sit down to a sociable meal, by eating from the same dish. The women are not excluded from taking their meals with the men; but there are certain ranks that are not allowed  
either

either to eat or drink together. This distinction begins with his majesty, but we know not where it ends.

They rise at day-break, and retire to rest as soon as it becomes dark. They, for the most part, sleep also in the day-time, when the weather is very hot. They are fond of associating together; in consequence of which, it is not uncommon to find several houses empty, and the possessors of them assembled in some other house, or upon some convenient spot in the neighbourhood, where they relax themselves by conversation and other amusements. Their private diversions chiefly consist of dancing, singing, and music. When two or three women snap their fingers, and sing in concert, it is called *oobai*; but when there are more, they form several parties, each of which sings in a different key, which constitutes an agreeable melody, and is termed *beeva* or *haiwa*. The songs are generally accompanied with the music of their flutes. The dances both of the men and women, are performed with an ease and grace which are difficult to be described.

We could not determine with precision, whether their marriages were rendered durable by any kind of solemn contract: it is certain, however, that the major part of the people contented themselves with one wife. The chiefs, indeed, commonly have several women, though there was only one who (as we thought) was confi-

dered in the light of mistress of the family. Though female chastity seemed to be held in little estimation, not a single breach of conjugal fidelity happened, to our knowledge, during our whole continuance at these islands; nor were the unmarried women of rank more liberal of their favours. But there were great numbers of a very different character.

The concern shewn by these islanders for the dead, is a strong proof of their humanity. Besides the *tooge*, which we have mentioned before, and burnt circles and scars, they strike a shark's tooth into their heads till the blood flows considerably, beat their teeth with stones, and thrust spears not only through their cheeks into their mouths, but also into the inner part of their thighs, and into their sides. The more painful operations, however, are only practised when they mourn the death of those who were most nearly connected with them. When one of them dies, he is wrapped up in mats and cloth, and then interred. The *fatookas* seem to be appropriated to the chiefs and other persons of distinction, as their burial-places; but the inferior people have no particular spot set apart for their interment. It is uncertain what part of the mourning ceremony follows immediately afterwards; but there is something besides the general one which is continued for a considerable time, the funeral of Marewage's wife being attended with ceremonies of five days duration. They seem to consider death as a great  
evil,

evil, to avert which they practise a very singular custom. When Captain Cook, during his second voyage, first visited these islands, he observed that many of the natives had one or both of their little fingers cut off; of the reason of which mutilation he could not then obtain a satisfactory account. But he was now informed, that they perform this operation when they are afflicted with some dangerous disorder, which they imagine may bring them to the grave. They suppose, that the little finger will be accepted of by the Deity, as a kind of propitiatory sacrifice sufficiently efficacious to procure their recovery. In cutting it off, they make use of a stone-hatchet. There was scarcely one person in ten who was not thus mutilated; and they sometimes cut so close, as to encroach upon that bone of the hand which joins the amputated finger. It is also common for the lower class of people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the sickness of the chiefs to whom they respectively belong.

When the rigid strictness with which they perform their mourning and religious ceremonies is considered, it might be expected, that they endeavoured thereby to secure to themselves eternal happiness; but their principal object regards things merely temporal; for they have apparently little conception of future punishment for sins committed in the present life. They believe, how-

ever, that they meet with just punishment upon earth; and, therefore, put every method in practice to render their divinities propitious. They admit a plurality of deities, all of them inferior to *Kallafootonga*, who they say is a female, and the supreme author of most things, residing in the heavens, and directing the wind, rain, thunder, &c. They are of opinion, that when she is much displeas'd with them, the productions of the earth are blasted, many things consumed by lightning, and themselves afflicted with sickness and death; but that when her anger abates, every thing is immediately restored to its former state. Among their subordinate deities, they mention *Futtasaihe*, or *Footasooa*, who has the administration of the sea, and its productions; *Toosooa-boolootoo*, god of the clouds and fog; *Talletebco*, *Mattaba*, *Tareeava*, and others. The same system of religion does not extend all over the Friendly Islands; the supreme deity of Hapae, for instance, being called *Alo Alo*. They entertain very absurd opinions relative to the power and various attributes of these beings, who, they suppose, have no further concern with them after death. They have, however, juster sentiments respecting the immortality and immateriality of the soul; which they call life, the living principle, or an *Otooa*, that is, a divinity. They imagine that, immediately after death, the souls of their chiefs are separated from their bodies, and go to a delightful region called  
*Boolootoo*,

*Boolootoo*, the god of which is named *Goolebo*. By this *Goolebo* they probably personify death. His country, according to their mythology, is the general repository of the dead; and those who are once conveyed thither, are no more subject to death, but feast on all the favourite productions of their native soil, with which this blissful abode is plentifully furnished. As for the souls of people of an inferior class, they are supposed by them to suffer a kind of transmigration; or are eaten up (they say) by a bird called *loata*, which walks upon the graves with that intent.

They do not worship any visible part of the creation, or any thing made by their own hands. They make no offerings of dogs, hogs, and fruit (as is the custom at Otaheite) unless emblematically. But there seems to be no reason to doubt of their offering up human sacrifices. This *fiatookas*, or *moraïs*, are, in general, burying-grounds and places of worship: some of them, however, appeared to be appropriated only to the former purpose; but these were small and greatly inferior to the rest.

We are very little acquainted with their form of government. A subordination, resembling the feudal system of our ancestors in Europe, is established among them; but of its subdivisions, and the constituent parts, we are ignorant. Though some of them informed us, that the king's power is unbounded, and that he has the absolute disposal

posal of the lives and properties of his subjects ; yet the few circumstances that offered themselves to our observation, contradicted, rather than confirmed, the idea of despotic sway. Mareewagee, Feenou, and Old Toobou, acted each the part of a petty sovereign, and not unfrequently counteracted the measures of the king. Nor was his court superior in splendor to those of Old Toobou and Mareewagee, who, next to his majesty, were the most potent chiefs in these islands ; and, next after them, Feenou appeared to stand highest in rank and authority. But, however independent on the king the principal men may be, the inferior people are totally subject to the will of the chiefs to whom they severally belong.

The island of Tongataboo is divided into numerous districts, each of which has its peculiar chief, who distributes justice, and decides disputes, within his own territory. Most of these chieftains have estates in other islands, whence they procure supplies. The king, at stated times, receives the product of his distant domains at Tongataboo, which is not only the usual place of his residence, but the abode of most persons of distinction among these islands. Its inhabitants frequently call it the Land of Chiefs, and stigmatize the subordinate isles with the appellation of Lands of Servants.

The chiefs are stiled by the people lords of the earth, and also of the sun and sky. The royal family

family assume the name of Futtafaihe, from the god distinguished by that appellation, who is probably considered by them as their tutelary patron. The king's peculiar title is simply *Tooe Tonga*. The order and decorum observed in his presence, and likewise in that of the other chiefs, are truly admirable. Whenever he sits down, all the attendants seat themselves before him, forming a semi-circle, and leaving a sufficient space between them and him, into which no one, unless he has particular business, presumes to come. Nor is any one suffered to sit, or pass, behind him, or even near him, without his permission. When a person wishes to speak to his majesty, he comes forward, and having seated himself before him, delivers in a few words what he has to say; then, after being favoured with an answer, retires. If the king speaks to any one, the latter gives an answer from his seat, unless he is to receive an order; in which case he rises from his place, and seats himself cross-legged \* before his majesty. To speak to the king standing, would here be considered as a glaring mark of rudeness.

None of the most civilized nations have ever exceeded these islanders in the great order and regularity maintained on every occasion, in ready

\* It may be proper to mention here, on the authority of Captain King, that this posture is peculiar to the men; for the females always sit with both their legs thrown a little on one side.

and

and submissive compliance with the commands of their chiefs, and in the perfect harmony that subsists among all ranks. Such a behaviour manifests itself in a remarkable manner, whenever their chiefs harangue a body of them assembled together, which frequently happens. The greatest attention and most profound silence are observed during the harangue; and whatever might have been the purport of the oration, we never saw a single instance, when any one of those who were present shewed signs of his being displeased, or seemed in the least inclined to dispute the declared will of the speaker.

It is a peculiar privilege annexed to the person of the king, not to be punctured, nor circumcised, or rather supercised, as all his subjects are. Whenever he walks out, all who meet him must sit down till he has passed. No person is suffered to be over his head; but, on the contrary, all must come under his feet. The method of doing homage to him, and the other chiefs, is as follows: the person who is to pay obeisance, squats down before the great personage, and bows the head down to the sole of his foot, which he taps or touches with the under and upper side of the fingers of each hand; then rising up, he retires. We had reason to think, that his majesty cannot refuse any one who is desirous of paying him this homage, which is called by the natives *moe moea*; for the people would frequently think proper to  
shew

shew him these marks of submission when he was walking; and he was on those occasions obliged to stop, and hold up one of his feet behind him, till they had performed this respectful ceremony. This, to so corpulent and unwieldy a man as Poulaho, must have been painful and troublesome; and we have sometimes seen him endeavour, by running, to get out of the way, or to reach a convenient place for sitting down. The hands, after having been thus applied, become, in some cases, useless for a little time; for, till they are washed, they must not touch food of any sort. This prohibition, in a country where water is far from being plentiful, would be attended with inconvenience, if a piece of any juicy plant, which they can immediately procure, being rubbed over the hands, did not serve for the purpose of purification. When the hands are in this situation, they term it *taboo rema*; the former word generally signifying forbidden, and the latter implying hand. When the *taboo* is incurred, by doing homage to a person of rank, it may thus easily be washed off: but, in several other cases, it must continue for a certain period. We have often seen women, who have been *taboo rema*, not fed by themselves, but by others. The interdicted person, after the limited time has elapsed, washes herself in one of their baths, which are, in general, dirty ponds of brackish water. She then waits upon the sovereign, and, after having paid  
the

the customary obeifance, takes hold of his foot, which ſhe applies to her ſhoulders, breaſt, and other parts: he then embraces her on both ſhoulders, and ſhe immediately retires, purified from her uncleannefs. If it be always neceſſary to have recourſe to his majeſty for this purpoſe (of which we are not certain, though Omai aſſured us it was) it may be one reaſon for his travelling very frequently from one iſland to another.

The word *taboo* has a great latitude of ſignification. They call human ſacrifices *tangata taboo*; and when any particular thing is prohibited to be eaten, or made uſe of, they ſay it is *taboo*. They informed us, that, if the king ſhould go into a houſe belonging to one of his ſubjects, that houſe would in conſequence become *taboo*, and could never be again inhabited by the owner of it; ſo that, wherever his majeſty travels, there are houſes peculiarly aſſigned for his accommodation. At this time, Old Toobou preſided over the *taboo*; that is, if Omai did not miſunderſtand thoſe who gave him the intelligence, he and his deputies had the inſpection of all the produce of the iſland, taking care that each individual ſhould cultivate and plant his quota, and directing what ſhould, and what ſhould not, be eaten. By ſo prudent a regulation, they take effectual precautions againſt a famine; ſufficient ground is employed in raiſing proviſions; and every article is ſecured from unneceſſary conſumption. By another good regulation,

lation, an officer of rank is appointed to superintend the police. This department was administered, while we continued among them, by Feenou, whose business (as we were informed) it was, to punish all delinquents: he was also generalissimo, or commander in chief of the forces of the islands. Poulaho himself declared to us, that, if he should become a bad man, Feenou would dethrone and kill him; by which he doubtless meant, that, if he neglected the duties of his high station, or governed in a manner that would prove prejudicial to the public welfare, Feenou would be desired, by the other chiefs, or by the collective body of the people, to depose him from his sovereignty, and put him to death. A monarch thus subject to controul and punishment for abuse of power, cannot justly be deemed a despotic prince.

When we take into consideration the number of islands of which this state consists, and the distance at which some of them are removed from the seat of government, attempts to throw off the yoke of subjection might be apprehended. But they informed us, that this circumstance never happens. One reason of their not being thus embroiled in domestic commotions may be this; that all the principal chiefs take up their residence at Tongataboo. They also secure the dependence of the other isles, by the decisive celerity of their operations; for if a seditious and popular man  
should

should start up in any of them, Feenou, or whoever happens to hold his office, is immediately dispatched thither to put him to death; by which means they extinguish an insurrection while it is yet in embryo.

The different classes of their chiefs seemed to be nearly as numerous as among us; but there are few, comparatively speaking, that are lords of extensive districts of territory. It is said, that, when a person of property dies, all his possessions devolve on the sovereign; but that it is customary to give them to the eldest son of the deceased, with this condition annexed, that he should provide, out of the estate, for the other children. The crown is hereditary; and we know, from a particular circumstance, that the Futtaihes, of which family is Poulaho, have reigned, in a direct line, for the space of at least one hundred and thirty-five years, which have elapsed between our present visit to these islands, and Tasman's discovery of them. Upon our inquiring of them, whether any traditional account of the arrival of Tasman's ships had been preserved among them till this time, we found, that this history had been delivered down to them, from their ancestors, with great accuracy: for they said that his two ships resembled ours, and also mentioned the place where they had lain at anchor, their having continued but a few days, and their quitting that station to go to Annamooka; and, for the purpose

pose of informing us how long ago this affair had happened, they communicated to us the name of the Futtafaihe who reigned at that time, and those who had succeeded him in the sovereignty, down to Poulaho, who is the fifth monarch since that period.

It might naturally be imagined, that the present sovereign of the Friendly Isles had the highest rank of any person in his dominions. But we found it to be otherwise; for Latoolibooloo, who has been already mentioned, and three women, are superior, in some respects, to Poulaho himself. These great personages are distinguished by the title of *Tammaba*, which implies a chief. When we made inquiry concerning them, we were informed that the late king, father of Poulaho, left behind him a sister of equal rank, and older than himself; that she, by a native of Feejee, had a son and two daughters; and that these three persons, as well as their mother, are of higher rank than the king. We endeavoured to discover the reason of this pre-eminence of the *Tammabas*, but without effect. The mother, and one of her daughters, named Toeela-kaipa, reside at Vavaoo. The other daughter, called Mougoula-kaipa, and Latoolibooloo the son, dwell at Tongataboo. Mougoula-kaipa is the lady who has been mentioned as having dined with Captain Cook on the 21st of June. Latoolibooloo was

supposed, by his countrymen, to be disordered in his senses. At Eooa, or Middleburg, they shewed us a considerable quantity of land, which was said to be his property; and we saw there a son of his, a child, who was honoured with the same title that his father enjoyed.

The language of these islands bears a striking resemblance to that of New-Zealand, of Otaheite, and the Society Isles. The pronunciation of these people differs, indeed, in many instances, from that both of Otaheite and New-Zealand; but, notwithstanding that, a great number of words are either very little changed, or exactly the same. The language, as spoken by the Friendly Islanders, is sufficiently copious to express all their ideas; and, besides being tolerably harmonious in common conversation, is easily adapted to the purposes of music. They have terms to signify numbers as far as a hundred thousand, beyond which they either would not, or could not, reckon.

The latitude of that part of Tongataboo where our observatory was erected, which was near the middle of the north-side of the island, was, according to the most accurate observations,  $21^{\circ} 8' 19''$  south; and its longitude was  $184^{\circ} 55' 18''$  east.

The tides are more considerable at the Friendly Islands, than at any other of Captain Cook's discoveries

coveries in this ocean, that are situate within either of the tropics. At Annamooka the tide rises and falls about six feet, upon a perpendicular. At Tongataboo, it rises and falls four feet and three quarters, on the full and change days; and three feet and a half at the quadratures.

A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
P A C I F I C O C E A N.

B O O K III.

OCCURRENCES AT OTAHEITE AND THE SOCIETY  
ISLES; AND PROSECUTION OF THE VOYAGE TO  
THE COAST OF NORTH-AMERICA.

C H A P. I.

*Heavy Squall—The Island of Toobouai discovered—  
Its Situation, Extent, and Produce—Description  
of the Persons, Dress, and Canoes, of its Inhab-  
itants—Arrival in Oheitepeha Bay at Ota-  
heite—Omai's Reception—His imprudent Con-  
duct—Account of two Spanish Ships which had  
twice visited Otabeite—Great Demand for red  
Feathers—Captain Cook visits a Chief, who was  
said by Omai to be the God of Bolabola—Account  
of the House erected by the Spaniards—Inscrip-  
tions—Allowance of Grog lessened—The Cap-  
tain's Interview with Wabeiadooda—Description  
of a Toopapao—An Enthusiast—The Ships anchor  
in Matavai Bay.*

**W**E had now taken our final leave of the  
Friendly Islands. On the 17th of July,  
at eight o'clock in the evening, Eooa bore north-  
east

east by north, distant three or four leagues. The wind blew a fresh gale at east. We stood to the south, till after six o'clock the next morning, when, from the same direction, a sudden squall took our ship aback; and before we could trim the ships on the other tack, the main-sail and the top-gallant sails were considerably torn.

On the 19th and 20th, the wind kept between the south-west, and south-east; then it veered to the east, north-east, and north.

We stretched to the east south-east, without meeting with any thing remarkable, till the 29th, at seven o'clock in the evening, when we had a very heavy squall of wind from the north. We were, at this time, under single-reefed top-sails, courses, and stay-sails. Two of the latter were almost demolished by the wind, and it was with the utmost difficulty that we saved the other sails. This squall being over, we saw several lights moving about on board the Discovery; whence we conjectured that something had given way; and, the next morning, we perceived that her main-top-mast had been lost. Both wind and weather remained very unsettled till noon, when the latter cleared up, and the former settled in the north-west quarter. We were now in the latitude of  $28^{\circ} 6'$  south, and our longitude was  $198^{\circ} 23'$  east. We saw some pintado-birds, which were the first we had seen, since we left the land.

At noon, on the 31st, Captain Clerke made a signal to speak with Captain Cook; and afterwards informed him, that the head of the main-mast had sprung, and in such a manner, as to render the rigging of another top-mast extremely dangerous; that he must therefore rig something lighter in its place. He further informed him, that he had lost his main-top gallant-yard; and had not another on board, nor a spar to make one. Captain Cook sent him the Resolution's sprit-fail-top-fail-yard, which supplied this want for the present. The next day, by getting up a jury-top-mast, on which he set a mizen-top-fail, he was enabled to keep way with the Resolution.

We steered east-north-east, and north-east, without meeting with any remarkable occurrence till the morning of the 8th of August, at eleven o'clock; when land was observed bearing north-north-east, about nine or ten leagues distant. At first it appeared like so many separate islands; but, as we approached, we found, it was all connected, and formed one and the same island. We steered directly for it with a fine gale, and, at half past six in the afternoon, it extended from north by east, to north-north-east, distant three or four leagues.

At day-break, the next morning, we steered for the north-west side of the island, and as we stood round its south-west part, we saw it guarded by a reef of coral rock, extending, in some places,



places, at least a mile from the land, and a high surf breaking upon it. As we drew near, we saw people walking or running along ashore, on several parts of the coast, and, in a short time after, when we had reached the lee-side of the island, we saw two canoes launched, in which were about a dozen men, who paddled towards us.

In order to give these canoes time to come up with us, as well as to sound for anchorage, we shortened sail; and, at the distance of half a mile from the reef, we found from forty to thirty-five fathoms water. The canoes, after having advanced within pistol-shot of the ships, suddenly stopped. Omai was desired, as was usual on such occasions, to endeavour to prevail upon the men in them to come nearer; but no arguments could induce them to trust themselves within our reach. They often pointed eagerly to the shore with their paddles, at the same time calling to us to go thither; and many of their people who were standing upon the beach, held up something white in their hands, which we construed as an invitation for us to land. We could easily have accomplished this, there being good anchorage without the reef, and an opening in it, through which the canoes had passed, which had no surf upon it. But the Captain did not chuse to risk the advantage of a fair wind, in order to examine an island, that appeared to be but of little consequence. We required no refreshments, if we

had been certain of meeting with them there, and therefore, after making several unsuccessful attempts to prevail upon these people to come near us, we made sail to the north, and left them; having first learned that the name of their island was Toobouai. It is situated in the latitude of  $23^{\circ} 25'$  south; and in  $210^{\circ} 37'$  east longitude.

The greatest extent of this island, in any direction, is not above five or six miles. Small, however, as it appears, there are hills in it of a considerable elevation; at the foot of which, is a narrow border of flat land, extending almost all round it, bordered with a white sand-beach. The hills were covered with herbage, except a few rocky cliffs, with patches of trees interspersed to their summits. This island, as we were informed by the men in the canoes, is plentifully stocked with hogs and fowls; and produces the several kinds of fruits and roots that are to be met with at the other islands in this neighbourhood.

From the conversation we had with those who came off to us, we discovered that the inhabitants of Toobouai speak the Otaheite language; an indubitable proof that they are of the same nation. Those whom we saw in the canoes, were a stout copper-coloured people; some wearing their hair (which was straight and black) flowing about the shoulders, and others having it tied in a bunch on the crown of the head. Their faces were roundish and full, but the features flat; and their  
counte-

countenances expressed a degree of natural ferocity. Their covering was a piece of narrow stuff wrapped round the waist, and passing between the thighs; but some of those whom we beheld upon the beach, were compleatly clothed in white. Some of our visiters, in the canoes, had their necks ornamented with pearl-shells; and one of them continued blowing a large conch-shell, to which a reed, of about two feet long, was fixed; he began in a long tone, without any variation; and afterwards converted it into a kind of musical instrument. Whether the blowing of the conch portended any thing, we cannot say, but we never found it the messenger of peace.

The length of their canoes appeared to be about thirty feet, and they rose about two feet above the surface of the water, as they floated. The fore-part projected a little; the after-part rose to the height of two or three feet, with a gradual curve, and, like the upper part of the sides, was carved all over. The rest of the sides were ornamented with flat white shells curiously disposed. There were eight men in one of the canoes, and seven in the other. They were conducted with small paddles, whose blades were almost circular; and they sometimes paddled, with the two opposite sides so close together, that they appeared to be but one boat; the rowers occasionally turning their faces to the stern, and pulling that way, without paddling the canoes round. Seeing we were determined

terminated to leave them, they stood up, and repeated something aloud; but we knew not whether they were expressing their enmity, or friendship. It is certain, however, that they had not any weapons with them; nor could we with our glasses discover, that those on shore were armed.

Leaving the island, we steered to the north with a fresh gale, and, at day-break, on the 12th, we perceived the island of Maitea. Otaheite appeared soon after; the point of Oheitepeha-bay bearing west, about four leagues distant. We steered for this bay, intending to anchor there, in order to draw some refreshments from the south-east part of the island, before we proceeded to Matavai, where we expected our principal supply. We had a fresh gale till two o'clock in the afternoon; when, at about a league from the bay, the wind suddenly died away. About two hours after, we had sudden squalls, with rain, from the east. About nine o'clock, we were obliged to stand out, and spend the night at sea.

As we drew near the island, we were attended by several canoes, each conducted by two or three men. But, as they were of the lower class, Omai seemed to take no particular notice of them, nor they of him. They did not even know, that he was one of their countrymen, though they had for some time conversed with him. At length a chief, whom Captain Cook had known before,  
named

named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who happened to be now at this corner of the island, and three or four others, all of whom knew Omai, before he embarked with Captain Furneaux, came on board. Yet there was nothing in the least tender or striking in their meeting, but, on the contrary, a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai, conducting his brother into the cabin, opened a drawer, and gave him a few red feathers. This circumstance being soon communicated to the rest of the natives on deck, Ootee, who before would hardly speak to him, now begged, that they might be *tayos* (friends) and exchange names. Omai accepted of the honour, and a present of red feathers ratified the agreement; and Ootee, by way of recompense, sent ashore for a hog. It was evident, however, to all of us, that it was not the man, but his property, that they esteemed. Had he not exhibited his treasure of red feathers, a commodity highly estimated in the island, it is a matter of great doubt whether they would have bestowed a single cocoa-nut upon him. Such was Omai's first reception among his countrymen, and we never expected it would be otherwise; but we supposed, that the valuable cargo of presents, with which he had been loaded by the liberality of his friends in England, would be the certain means of raising him into consequence among the first persons throughout the extent of the Society Islands. This, indeed,

must have been the case, had he conducted himself with any degree of prudence; but he paid little or no attention to the repeated advice of his well-wishers, and laid himself open to every imposition.

We understood from the natives who came off to us, that since Captain Cook last visited this island in 1774, two other ships had twice been in Oheitepeha-bay, and had left animals there, like those we had on board. But, on enquiry into the particulars, we found, that they consisted only of hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and the male of another animal, which they so imperfectly described, that we could not conjecture what it was. These ships, they informed us, had come from a place called *Reema*; which we supposed to be Lima, the capital of Peru, and that these late visitors were consequently Spaniards. They told us, that the first time they arrived, they built a house, and left behind them two priests, a boy or servant, and a person called *Mateema*; taking away with them, when they sailed, four of the natives; that about ten months afterwards, the same ships returned, bringing back only two of the natives, the other two having died at Lima; and that, after a short stay, they took away the people they had left; but that the house which they erected was left standing.

News having been propagated on shore, of red feathers being on board our ships, we were, early  
the

the next morning, surrounded by a multitude of canoes, crowded with people, with plenty of hogs and fruits. A quantity of feathers, which might be taken from the body of a tom-tit, would, at that time, purchase a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight. But as the whole ships crew were possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it decreased above five hundred *per cent.* in its value in a few hours. However, the balance, even then, was considerably in our favour, and red feathers still preserved their superiority over every other commodity. Some of the islanders would not dispose of a hog, without receiving an axe in exchange; but nails, and beads, and many other trinkets, which, during our former voyages, were held in high estimation at this island, were now so much despised, that few would even deign to look at them.

Not having wind in the morning, it was nine o'clock before we could anchor in the bay, when we moored with the two bowers. We had not long anchored, before Omai's sister came on board, to congratulate him on his arrival. It was pleasing to observe, that, to the honour of each of them, their meeting was marked with expressions of the tenderest affection, more easily conceived than described.

When this affecting scene was closed, and the ship properly moored, Omai attended Captain Cook on shore. The Captain's first object was

to pay a visit to a man whom Omai represented as a very extraordinary personage indeed, saying he was the God of Bolabola. They saw him seated under one of those awnings, which are usually carried in their larger canoes. He was old, and had so far lost the use of his limbs, that he was carried from place to place upon a hand-barrow. By some, he was called *Olla*, or *Orra*, which is the name of the God of Bolabola; but his real name was Etary. From Omai's extraordinary account of this person, the Captain expected to have seen religious adoration paid to him: but he saw very little to distinguish him from their other chiefs. Omai presented to him a tuft of red feathers, fastened to the end of a small stick; but, after a little conversation with this Bolabola man, his attention was excited by the presence of his mother's sister, who was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy. The Captain left him with the old lady in this situation, surrounded by a number of people, and went to take a survey of the house said to have been erected by the strangers who had lately landed here. He found it still standing at a small distance from the beach. It was composed of wooden materials, which appeared to have been brought hither, ready prepared, in order to set up as occasion might require; for the planks were all numbered. It consisted of two small rooms, in the inner

of

of which, were a bedstead, a bench, a table, some old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives seemed to be remarkably careful, as well as of the building itself, which had received no injury from the weather, a kind of shed having been erected over it. Scuttles, serving as air-holes, appeared all round the building; and, perhaps, they were also meant for the additional purpose of firing from, with muskets, if necessity should require it. A wooden cross was placed at a little distance from the front, on the transverse part of which appeared the following inscription:

*Christus vincit.*

On the perpendicular part (which confirmed our conjecture that the two ships were Spanish) was engraved,

*Carolus III. imperat, 1774.*

And on the other side of the post, Captain Cook very properly preserved the memory of the prior visits of the English, by inscribing,

*Georgius tertius rex,*

*Annis 1767,*

*1769, 1773, 1774, et 1777.*

Near the foot of the cross the islanders pointed out to us the grave of the Commodore of the two ships, who died here, while they lay in the bay, on their first arrival. His name, as near as we could gather from their pronunciation, was

Oreede.

Oreede. The Spaniards, whatever their intentions might be in visiting this island, seemed to have taken infinite pains to have ingratiated themselves with the natives; who, upon all occasions, mentioned them with the strongest terms of esteem and veneration.

On this occasion, the Captain met with no chief of any considerable note excepting the aged personage above described. Waheia dooa, king of Tiaraboo, (as this part of the island is called by the natives) was now absent; and we were afterwards informed, that (though his name was the same) he was not the same person as the chief whom Captain Cook had seen here in 1774; but his brother, a youth of ten years of age, who had succeeded the elder Waheia dooa. We also discovered, that the celebrated Oberea was dead; but that Otoo, and all our other friends, were living.

When Captain Cook returned from the house erected by the Spaniards, he found Omai haranguing a very large company; and could with difficulty disengage him to accompany him aboard, where he had to settle a matter of importance.

Knowing that Otaheite, and the neighbouring islands, could supply us plentifully with coconuts, the liquor of which is a most excellent beverage, he wished to prevail upon his people to consent to be abridged, for a short time, of their stated allowance of spirits to mix with water.

But

But as this, without assigning some powerful reason, might have occasioned a general murmur, he assembled the ship's company, to communicate to them the intent of the voyage, and the extent of our future operations. He took notice of the generous rewards offered, by parliament, to such as shall first discover a communication between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, in the Northern Hemisphere, as well as to those who shall first penetrate beyond the 89th degree of northern latitude. He said, that he did not entertain a doubt, that he should find them ready to co-operate with him in attempting to obtain one, or both these rewards; but, that it would be necessary to be strictly oeconomic in the expenditure of our stores and provisions, as we had not a chance of getting a supply after leaving these islands. He further observed, that the duration of our voyage would exceed by a year, at least, what had been originally supposed, by our having lost the opportunity of getting to the north this summer. He begged them to consider the various obstructions, and aggravated hardships, they must yet labour under, if they should be under the necessity of being put to short allowance, of any species of provisions, in a cold climate. He therefore submitted to them, whether it would not be the most adviseable to be prudent in time, and rather than run the risk of having their spirits exhausted, when they might

be most wanted, to consent to be without their grog at present, when we could supply its place with so excellent a liquor as that of cocoa-nuts. He added, nevertheless, that he would leave the determination entirely to their own choice.

This proposal did not remain a moment under consideration, and Captain Cook had the satisfaction to find that it was unanimously approved of. He ordered Captain Clerke to make a similar proposal to his people; which they also readily agreed to. The serving of grog was therefore immediately stopped, except on Saturday nights, when all the men had a full allowance of it, to enable them to drink the healths of their female friends in England; lest, amidst the pretty girls of Otaheite, they should be totally forgotten.

We began, the next day, some necessary operations; such as inspecting the provisions in the main and fore-hold, getting the casks of beef and pork, &c. out of the ground tier, and putting a quantity of ballast in their place. The ship was ordered to be caulked, which she stood in much need of; having, at times, made a considerable deal of water on our passage from the Friendly Islands. Captain Cook also put his cattle on shore, and appointed two of his men to look after them while grazing; not intending to leave any of them on this part of the island.

It rained, almost incessantly, the two following days; notwithstanding which, we were visited by

the natives from every quarter, the news of our arrival having most rapidly spread. Waheiadooá, though at a considerable distance, had been informed of it; and in the afternoon of the 16th, a chief, named Etoorea, who was his tutor, brought Captain Cook two hogs as a present from him; acquainting him, at the same time, that he himself would attend him the day after. He was punctual to his promise; for the Captain received a message from him early the next morning, notifying his arrival, and requesting he would go ashore to meet him. In consequence of this invitation, Omai and he prepared to make him a formal visit. Omai, on this occasion, took some pains to dress himself, not after the manner of the English, nor that of Otaheite, or Tongataboo, or in the dress of any other country upon earth; but in a strange medley of all the habiliments and ornaments he was possessed of.

Thus equipped, they got ashore, and first paid a visit to Etary; who, carried on a hand-barrow, accompanied them to a large building, where he was set down; Omai seated himself on one side of him, and Captain Cook on the other. The Captain caused a piece of Tongataboo cloth to be spread, on which were placed the presents he intended to make. The young Chief soon after arrived, attended by his mother, and several principal men, who all seated themselves opposite to us. A man who sat near the Captain, made a

short speech, consisting of separate sentences; part of which was dictated by those about him. Another, on the opposite side, near the chief, spoke next; Etary after him, and then Omai, &c. The subjects of these orations were Captain Cook's arrival, and his connexions with them. Amongst other things, one of them told the Captain, that the men of *Reema* (the Spaniards) desired they would not suffer him to come into Oheitepeha Bay, if he should return again to the island, for that it was their property; but that, so far from regarding this request, he was authorized now to surrender to him the province of Tiaraboo, and every thing that was in it. It is evident from this, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present circumstances. The young chief, at length, was directed, by his attendants, to embrace Captain Cook; and, as a confirmation of this treaty of friendship, they exchanged names. After these ceremonies were over, he and his friends accompanied the Captain, to dine with him on board.

Omai had prepared, as a present for Otoo, the king of the whole island, a *maro*, composed of red and yellow feathers; and, considering where we were, it was a present of great value. Captain Cook endeavoured to prevail on him not to produce it now, wishing him to keep it till he had an opportunity of presenting it to Otoo with his own hands. But he entertained too good an  
opinion

opinion of the fidelity of his countrymen, to be guided by his advice. He was determined to carry it ashore, on this occasion, and to give it to Waheia doo, to be forwarded by him to Otoo, and added to the royal *maro*. By this management, he supposed he should oblige both chiefs; on the contrary, he highly disobliged that whose favour was of the most consequence to him, without obtaining any reward from the other. The Captain was prophetic upon this occasion; for Waheia doo, as he expected, kept the *maro* for himself, and only sent to Otoo about a twentieth part of what composed the magnificent present.

On the 19th, Captain Cook received, from the young chief, a present of ten or a dozen hogs, some cloth, and a quantity of fruit. In the evening, we exhibited some fireworks, which both pleased and astonished the numerous spectators.

Some of our gentlemen, in their walks, discovered, as they thought, a Roman Catholic chapel. They described the altar which they said they had seen, and every other constituent part of such a place of worship. They mentioned, however, at the same time, that two persons, who had the care of it, would not permit them to go in; on which account the Captain imagined they were mistaken, and had the curiosity to pay a visit to it himself. The supposed chapel happened to be a *toopapaoo*, in which the body of the late Waheia doo lay, in

a kind of state. It was in a pretty large house, enclosed with a low palisade. The *toopapao* was remarkably neat, and resembled one of those little awnings over their large canoes. It was hung and covered with cloths and mats of a variety of colours, which had a beautiful effect. One piece of scarlet broad cloth of the length of four or five yards, appeared conspicuous among the other ornaments; which had probably been received as a present from the Spaniards. This cloth, and some tassels of feathers, suggested to our gentlemen the idea of a chapel; and their imagination supplied whatever else was wanting to create a resemblance: hearing that the Spaniards had visited this place, might also operate on their minds upon this occasion, and add to the probability of its being a chapel. Small offerings of fruits and roots seemed to be daily made at this shrine, some pieces being now quite fresh. These were deposited on a kind of altar, which stood without the palisades; within which we were not permitted to enter. Two men constantly attended here, both night and day; as well to watch over the place, as to dress and undress the *toopapao*. When Captain Cook went to survey it, the cloth and its appendages were rolled up; but, at his request, the two attendants placed it in order, but not till after they had dressed themselves in clean white robes. The chief,

chief, we were informed, had been dead about twenty months.

Having provided a fresh supply of water, and finished all our necessary operations, on the 22d we brought off our animals from shore, and made ready for sea. While the ships were unmooring, Omai and Captain Cook landed, in the morning of the 23d, to take leave of the young chief. While they were with him, one of those persons, whom they call *Eatoos*, from a persuasion that they possess the spirit of the divinity, presented himself before them. He had all the appearances of insanity about him, and his only covering was a quantity of plantain leaves wrapped round his waist. He uttered what he had to say in a low, squeaking voice, so as hardly to be understood. But Omai said he perfectly comprehended him, and that he was advising Waheia doo not to accompany Captain Cook to Matavai, an expedition which he had never known that he intended, nor had the Captain ever made such a proposal to him. The *Eatooa* also predicted, that the ships would not arrive that day at Matavai. In this, however, he was mistaken; though appearances, at that time, favoured his assertion, as there was not a single breath of wind in any direction. While he was delivering his prophecy, a heavy shower of rain came on, which occasioned all to run for shelter, except himself, who appeared to disregard it. He continued squeaking about half

an hour, and then retired. No attention was paid to what he uttered, though some of the natives laughed at him.

Captain Cook asked the chief, whether he was an *Earee* or a *Towtow*? The answer he received was, that he was *taata eno*, that is, a bad man. And yet, notwithstanding this, and the little notice taken of the mad prophet, superstition so far governs the natives, that they absolutely believe such persons to be possessed with the spirit of the *Eatoca*. Omai seemed to be well instructed concerning them. He said, that, during the fits, with which they are seized, they know nobody, and that if any one of them is a man of property, he will then give away every moveable he possesses, if his friends do not put them out of his reach; and, when he recovers, he seems not to have the least remembrance of what he had done during the time the fit was upon him.

Soon after the Captain got on board, a light breeze springing up at east, we got under sail, and the Resolution anchored, the same evening, at Matavaí Bay; but the Discovery did not get in till the next morning; consequently the man's prophecy was half fulfilled.

## C H A P. II.

*Interview with Otoo, King of Otabeite—Imprudent Behaviour of Omai—Various Animals landed—Occupations on Shore—Visit from a Native who had been at Lima—Account of Oodidee—False Report—The Islanders make a precipitate Retreat, but soon return—A Rebellion in Eimeo—Council of Chiefs—War with Eimeo resolved on—A Human Sacrifice—Circumstantial Description of that Solemnity—The great Morai at Attaboaroo described—Behaviour of the Natives during the Ceremony—Particular Customs.*

ON Sunday the 24th, in the morning, Otoo, the king of the whole island, accompanied by a great number of the natives in their canoes, came from Oparre, his place of residence, and having landed on Matavai Point, sent a messenger on board, intimating his desire to see Captain Cook there. He accordingly went ashore, attended by Omai, and some of the officers. They found a vast multitude of people assembled on this occasion, in the midst of whom was the king, with his father, his two brothers, and three sisters. The Captain went towards him and saluted him, being followed by Omai, who kneeled and embraced his legs. Though Omai had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his

his best apparel, and behaved with great respect and modesty, yet very little notice was taken of him. He made the king a present of two or three yards of gold cloth, and a large piece of red feathers, and the Captain gave him a gold-laced hat, a suit of fine linen, some tools, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets worn at the Friendly Islands.

This visit being over, the king, and all the royal family, accompanied Captain Cook on board, followed by several canoes, plentifully laden with all kind of provisions. Each of the family owned a part; so that the Captain had a present from every one of them; and each received from him a separate present in return. Not long after, the king's mother came on board, bringing with her some provisions and cloth, which she divided between the Commodore and Omai. Though the latter was but little noticed at first by his countrymen, they no sooner gained information of his wealth, than they began to court his friendship. Captain Cook encouraged this as far as lay in his power, being desirous of fixing him with Otoo. Intending to leave all his European animals at this island, he thought Omai would be able to give the natives some instruction with regard to their use, and the management of them. Besides, the Captain was convinced, that the farther he was removed from his native island, the more he would be respected. But, unfortunately, Omai rejected his  
his

his advice, and behaved in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of all the most considerable persons at Otaheite. He associated with none but strangers and vagabonds, whose sole intention was to plunder him: and, if the Captain had not interfered, they would not have left him a single article of any consequence. This conduct drew upon him the ill-will of the principal chiefs; who found that they could not obtain, from any one in either ship, such valuable presents as were bestowed by Omai on the lowest of the people. After dinner, a party of us accompanied Otoo to Oparre, taking with us some poultry, consisting of a peacock and hen, a turkey-cock and hen; three geese, one gander, four ducks, and a drake. All these we left at Oparre, in the possession of Otoo; and the geese and ducks began to breed, before we sailed. We found there a gander, that Captain Wallis had given to Oberea ten years before; we also met with several goats, and the Spanish bull, whom they kept tied to a tree, near the habitation of Otoo. We never beheld a finer animal of his kind. He now belonged to Etary, and had been conveyed from Oheitepeha to this place, in order to be shipped for Bolabola. The next day the Commodore sent to this bull the three cows that he had on board; and the bull, which he had brought, the horse, and mare, and sheep, were now put ashore at Matavai. Having thus disposed

posed of these animals, he found himself eased of the extraordinary trouble and vexation that had attended the bringing this living cargo to such a distance.

As Captain Cook intended to continue here a considerable time, we set up our two observatories on Matavai Point; and, adjoining to them, two tents were pitched, for the reception of a guard, and of such people as might be left on shore, in different departments. The command, at this station, was intrusted to Mr. King; who also attended the astronomical and other observations. While we remained here, the crews of both ships were occupied in many necessary operations. The Discovery's mainmast was carried ashore, and made as good as it had ever been before. Our sails and water-casks were repaired; both our ships were caulked; and the rigging was completely over-hauled. We likewise inspected the bread that we had on board in casks, and found that but little of it was damaged.

On the 26th, a piece of ground was cleared for a garden, and planted with several articles; very few of which will, probably, be looked after by the natives. Some potatoes, melons, and pineapple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding before we quitted the place. We had brought, from the Friendly Islands, several shaddock-trees, which we also planted here; and they will in all probability succeed, unless their growth should

be

be checked by the same idle and premature curiosity which destroyed a vine planted at Oheitepeha by the Spaniards. Many of the natives assembled to taste the first fruit it produced; but, the grapes being still sour, they considered it as little better than poison, and trod it under foot. In that state Omai accidentally found it, and was rejoiced at the discovery; for he was confident, that if he had but grapes, he could easily make wine. Accordingly, he had several slips cut off from the tree, with an intention of carrying them away with him; and we pruned, and put in order, the remains of it.

Before we had been two days at anchor in Matavai Bay, we were visited by all our old friends, whose names are mentioned in the narrative of Captain Cook's last voyage. Not one of them came with empty hands; so that we had an amazing quantity of provisions, without any apprehensions of exhausting the island, which presented to our eyes every mark of the most exuberant fertility and abundance. Soon after we had arrived here, one of the islanders, whom the Spaniards had carried with them to Lima, paid us a visit; but, in his exterior appearance, he was not distinguishable from the rest of his countrymen. He still remembered some Spanish words, among which the most frequent were, *si Sennor*. We also found here the young man whom we called Oedidee, but whose real name is Heete-heete.

Captain Cook had carried him from Ulietea on board his ship in 1773, and brought him back in the succeeding year, after he had visited the Friendly Islands, New-Zealand, Easter Island, and the Marquesas. He had come from Bolabola (of which he was a native) to Otaheite, about three months before, probably with the sole view of gratifying his curiosity. He preferred the modes, and even dress, of his countrymen to ours; for, though Captain Cook gave him some clothes, which our Board of Admiralty had thought proper to send for his use (to which he added a chest of tools, and several other articles, as a present from himself) he, after a few days, declined wearing them. This instance, as well as that of the person who had been at Lima, may be adduced as a proof of the strong inclination of mankind in general to habits acquired at an early age; and it is perhaps no unreasonable supposition, that even Omai, who had imbibed almost the whole English manners, will, in a short time after being left by us, return, like Oedidee, and the visiter of Lima, to his own native garments, and his original mode of life.

In the morning of the 27th, a man from Oheitepaha informed us, that two Spanish ships had anchored in that bay the preceding night; and to confirm this intelligence, he produced some coarse blue cloth, which, he said, he had got out of one of the ships. He further said, that Mateema was  
in

in one of the ships; and that they would come to Matavai in two or three days. These, and some other circumstances, which he mentioned, gave the story so much the appearance of truth, that the Commodore dispatched Lieutenant Williamson in a boat, to look into Oheitepeha Bay; and, in the mean time, both our ships were put in a posture of defence. For, though England and Spain were at peace when he left England, he did not know but that a different scene might, by this time, have opened. Upon enquiry, however, we had reason to imagine, that the relater of the story had imposed upon us; and this was put beyond all doubt, when Mr. Williamson returned the day following, who made his report to Captain Cook, that he had been at Oheitepeha, and found that no ships were there at present, nor had any been there since we left it. The people of this part of the island, where we now were stationed, told us, indeed, at first, that it was a fiction invented by those of Tiaraboo. But what view they could have, we could not conceive, unless they supposed that the report would induce us to quit the island, and thus deprive the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe of the advantages they might otherwise reap from our ships remaining there; the natives of the two parts of the island being inveterate enemies to each other.

Since we arrived at Matavai, the weather had been very unsettled till the 29th; before which day

day we were unable to get equal altitudes of the sun for ascertaining the going of the time-keeper. The caulking, and other repairs of the ships, were also retarded by the same cause. In the evening of this day, the islanders made a precipitate retreat, both from our land station, and from on board the ships. We conjectured that this arose from their knowing that some theft had been committed, and apprehending punishment upon that account. At length, we became acquainted with the whole affair. One of the Surgeon's mates had made an excursion into the country to purchase curiosities, and had taken with him four hatchets for the purpose of exchange. Having been so imprudent as to employ a native to carry them, the fellow took an opportunity of running off with so valuable a prize. This was the reason of the sudden flight, in which Otoo himself, and all his family, had joined; and it was with difficulty that the Captain stopped them, after following them for the space of two or three miles. As he had determined to take no measures for the recovery of the hatchets, that his people for the future might be more upon their guard against such negligence, every thing quickly resumed its former tranquillity.

The next morning, some messengers arrived from Eimeo, with intelligence, that the people of that island were in arms; and that Otoo's partizans there had been obliged by the opposite party

party to retreat to the mountains. The quarrel between the two islands, which began in 1774, had partly subsisted ever since. A formidable armament had sailed soon after Captain Cook left Otaheite in his last voyage; but the malecontents of Eimeo had made so gallant a resistance, that the fleet had returned without success; and now another expedition was deemed necessary. On the arrival of these messengers, the chiefs assembled at Otoo's house, where the Captain actually was at that time, and had the honour of being admitted into their council. One of the messengers opened the business with a speech of considerable length, the purport of which was to explain the situation of affairs in Eimeo, and to excite the Otaheitean chiefs to arm on the occasion. This opinion was opposed by others who were against commencing hostilities; and the debate was, for some time, carried on with great order and decorum. At length, however, they became very tumultuous, and the Captain began to expect that their meeting would conclude like a Polish diet. But the contending chiefs cooled as fast as they grew warm, and order was speedily restored. In the end, the party for war prevailed; and it was resolved, though not unanimously, that a strong force should be sent to Eimeo. Otoo said very little during the whole debate. Those of the council, who were inclinable for war, applied to the Captain for his assistance; and all of them

were desirous of knowing what part he would take. Omai was sent for to act as his interpreter; but, as he could not be found, the Captain, being under a necessity of speaking for himself, told them, as well as he could, that, as he was not perfectly acquainted with the dispute, and as the natives of Eimeo had never given him the least cause of offence, he could not think of engaging in hostilities against them. With this declaration, they either were, or appeared to be, satisfied. The council was then dissolved; but, before the Captain retired, Otoo desired him to come again in the afternoon, and bring Omai with him.

A party of us accordingly waited upon him at the appointed time; and he conducted us to his father, in whose presence the dispute with Eimeo was again discussed. The Commodore being very desirous of effecting an accommodation, sounded the old chief on that subject; but he was deaf to any such proposal, and fully determined to carry on hostilities. On our enquiry into the cause of the war, we were informed, that, several years ago, a brother of Waheia doo, of Fiaraboo, was sent to Eimeo, at the desire of Maheine, a popular chief of that island, to be their king; but had not been there many days before Maheine, having caused him to be put to death, set up for himself, in opposition to Tierataboonoe, nephew of the deceased, who now became the lawful heir, or perhaps had been appointed, by the people of  
Otaheite,

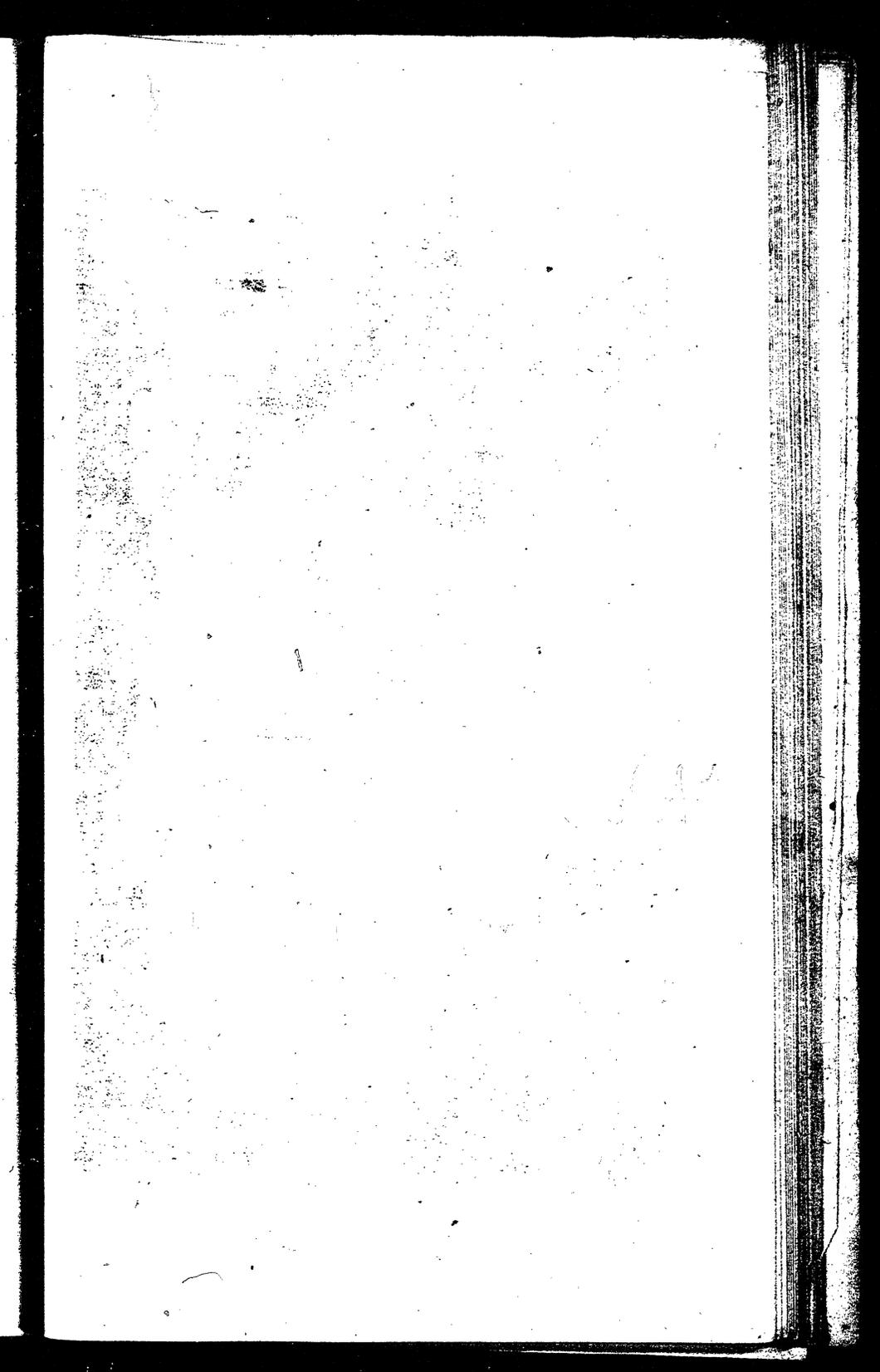
Otaheite, to succeed to the government on the death of the other.

Towha, who is related to Otoo, and chief of the district of Tettaha, and who had been commander in chief of the armament sent against Eimeo in 1774, happened not to be at Matavai at this time, and, therefore, was not present at these consultations. It appeared, however, that he was no stranger to what was transacted; and that he entered into the affair with great eagerness and spirit. For, on the 1st of September, a messenger arrived from him to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed a man to be sacrificed to the *Eatooa*, with the view of imploring the assistance of the deity against Eimeo. This ceremony was to be performed at the great *morai*, at Attahooroo; and Otoo's presence was necessary on the occasion. Captain Cook was desirous of being present at this solemnity, and therefore proposed to Otoo, that he might be permitted to accompany him. To this the king readily consented; and they immediately set out in the Captain's boat, with his old friend Potatou, Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Webber, while Omai followed them in a canoe. In their way they landed upon a small island, lying off Tettaha, where they found Towha and his attendants. After a little conversation between the two chiefs, on the subject of the war, Towha addressed himself to the Captain, soliciting his assistance. When he excused himself, Towha seemed

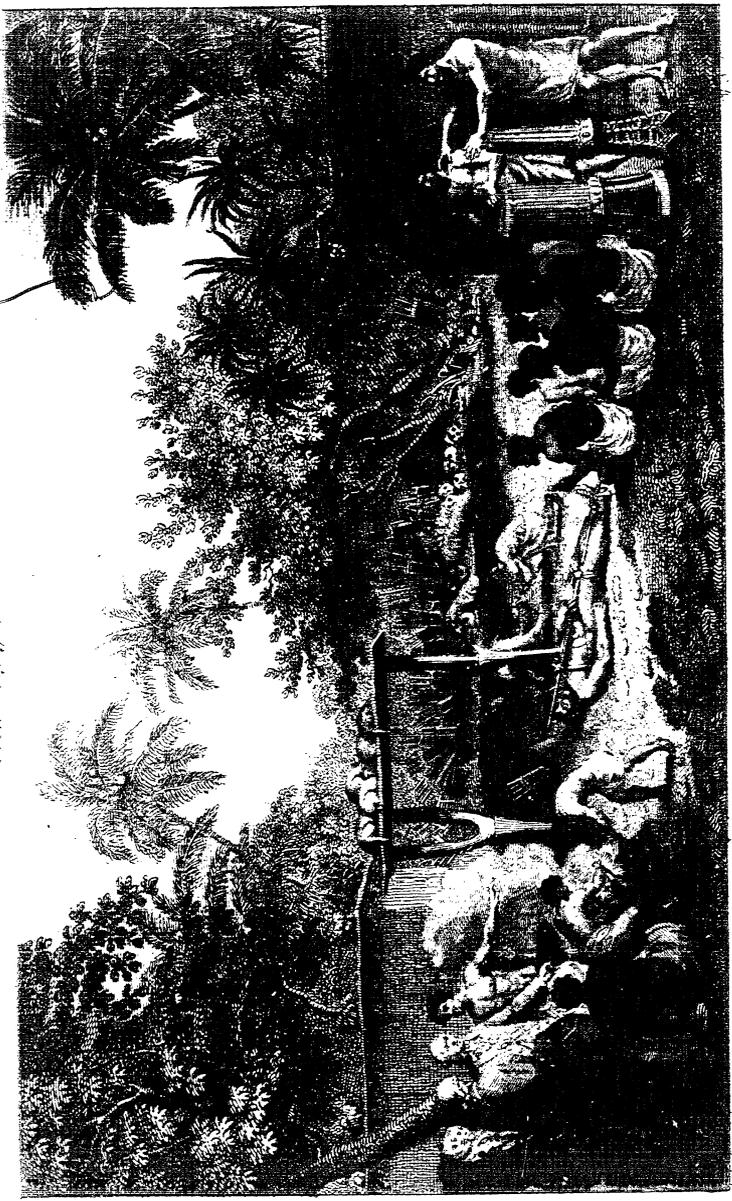
displeas'd; thinking it rather extraordinary, that one who had constantly declared himself the friend of their island, should now refuse to fight against its enemies. Before they parted, Towha gave to Otoo two or three red feathers, tied up in a tuft; our party then re-embarked, having taken on board a priest who was to assist at the solemnity.

As soon as they landed at Attahooroo, which was about two o'clock, Otoo desired that the sailors might be ordered to continue in the boat; and that Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Webber, would take off their hats as soon as they should come to the *morai*, to which they immediately proceeded, attended by numbers of men, and some boys; but not one woman was present. They found four priests, with their assistants, waiting for them. The dead body, or sacrifice, was in a small canoe, that lay on the beach, fronting the *morai*. Two of the priests, with several of their attendants, were sitting by the canoe; the others at the *morai*. Our company stopped at the distance of twenty or thirty paces from the priests. Here Otoo placed himself; our gentlemen, and a few others, standing by him, while the majority of the people were removed at a greater distance.

The ceremonies now commenced. One of the attendants of the priests brought a young plantain-tree, and laid it down before the king. Another approached, bearing a small tuft of red feathers,



*Cook's Voyages, Quarto Edition.*



*SATURDAY'S SACRIFICE IN A MORAL OR OPHELTIC.*

thers, twisted on some fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, with which he touched one of Otoo's feet, and afterwards retired with it to his companions. One of the priests who were seated at the *morai*, now began a long prayer; and, at particular times, sent down young plantain-trees, which were placed upon the sacrifice. During this prayer, an islander, who stood by the officiating priest, held in his hands two bundles, in one of which, as we afterwards found, was the royal *maro*; and the other, if we may be allowed the expression, was the ark of the *Eátooa*. The prayer being finished, the priests at the *morai*, with their assistants, went and sat down by those who were upon the beach, carrying the two bundles with them. They here renewed their prayers; during which the plantain-trees were taken, one by one, at various times, from off the dead body, which, being wrapped up in cocoa-leaves and small branches, was now taken out of the canoe, and laid upon the beach. The priests placed themselves around it; some standing, and others sitting; and one, or more of them, repeated sentences for about ten minutes. The body was now stripped of the leaves and branches, and placed parallel with the sea-shore. Then one of the priests, standing at the feet of the corpse, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was occasionally joined by the others, each of them holding a tuft of red feathers in his hand. During this prayer, some hair was pulled

A HUMAN SACRIFICE, IN A MORAI, IN OREHEITE.

off the head of the intended sacrifice, and the left eye was taken out; both which being wrapped up in a green leaf, were presented to the king; who, however, did not touch them, but gave, to the man who presented them, the tuft of red feathers which he had received from Towha. This, with the eye and hair, was taken to the priests. Not long after, his majesty sent them another piece of feathers. In the course of this last ceremony, a king-fisher making a noise in the trees, Otoo turned to Captain Cook, saying, "That is the *Eatoca*;" and seemed to consider it as a favourable prognostic.

The corpse was then carried a little way, and laid under a tree; near which were fixed three thin pieces of wood, variously carved. The bundles of cloth were placed on a part of the *mōrai*; and the tufts of red feathers were laid at the feet of the dead body, round which the priests stationed themselves; and our gentlemen were now permitted to go as near as they pleased. He who seemed to be the chief priest spoke for about a quarter of an hour, with different tones and gestures; sometimes appearing to expostulate with the deceased; at other times, asking several questions; then making various demands, as if the dead person either had power himself, or interest with the deity, to engage him to grant such requests; among which he desired him to deliver Eimeo, Maheine its chief, the women, hogs, and other

other things of the island, into their hands; which was, indeed, the express object of the sacrifice. He then prayed near half an hour, in a whining tone, and two other priests joined in the prayer, in the course of which a priest plucked some more hair from the head of the corpse, and put it upon one of the bundles. The chief priest now prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers received from Towha. Having finished, he gave them to another priest, who prayed in like manner; then all the tufts of feathers were placed upon the bundles of cloth, which concluded the ceremony at this place.

The dead body was now carried to the most conspicuous part of the *morai*, with the feathers and the two bundles of cloth, while the drums beat slowly. The feathers and bundles were laid against the pile of stones, and the body at the foot of them. The priests having again seated themselves round the corpse, renewed their prayers, while some of their assistants dug a hole about the depth of two feet, into which they threw the victim, and covered it over with stones and earth. While they were committing the body to the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, upon which Omai said to Captain Cook, that it was the *Eatooa*. A fire having been made in the mean time, a lean half-starved dog was produced, and killed by twisting his neck. The hair was then singed off, and the entrails being taken out,

were thrown into the fire, where they were left to be consumed; but the kidney, heart, and liver, were only roasted, by being put on heated stones; and the carcase of the dog, after being rubbed over with the blood, was, with the liver, &c. laid down before the priests, who were seated round the grave, praying. They for some time uttered ejaculations over the dog, while two men, at intervals, beat very loud on two drums; and a boy screamed, in a loud shrill voice, three times. This, they said, was to invite the *Eatooa* to feast on the banquet that they had provided for him. When the priests had finished their prayers, the body, heart, liver, &c. of the dog, were placed on a *whatta*, or scaffold, about six feet in height, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, which had been lately sacrificed. The priests and attendants now gave a kind of shout, which put an end to the ceremonies for the present. The evening being arrived, our gentlemen were conducted to a house belonging to Potatou, where they were entertained and lodged for the night. Having been informed, that the religious rites were to be renewed the next morning, they would not quit the place while any thing remained to be seen. Some of them repaired to the scene of action early in the morning; and, soon afterwards, a pig was sacrificed, and laid upon the same scaffold with the others. About eight o'clock, Otou took our party

party again to the *morai*, where the priests, and a great multitude of people, were by this time assembled. The two bundles occupied the place where they had been deposited the preceding evening; the two drums were in the front of the *morai*, and the priests were stationed beyond them. The king placed himself between the drums, and desired Captain Cook to stand by him.

The ceremony of this day began with bringing a young plantain-tree, and laying it at his majesty's feet. A prayer was then repeated by the priests, holding in their hands several tufts of red feathers, and also a plume of ostrich feathers, which the Commodore had presented to Otoo on his first arrival. When the priests had ended the prayer, they changed their station, and placed themselves between our gentlemen and the *morai*. One of them, the same who had performed the principal part the preceding day, began another prayer, which continued near half an hour. During this prayer, the tufts of red feathers were put, one by one, upon the ark of the *Eatooa*. Not long after, four pigs were produced; one of which was immediately killed, and the three others were taken to a neighbouring sty.

One of the bundles was now untied; and it was found to contain the *maro*, with which the Otaheiteans invest their kings. When taken out of the cloth, it was spread on the ground, at full length, before the priests. It is a girdle about  
fifteen

fifteen feet in length, and one foot and a quarter in breadth, and is probably put on in the same manner as the common *maro*, or piece of cloth, used by these islanders to wrap round the waist. It was ornamented with yellow and red feathers; but principally with the former. One end of it was bordered with eight pieces, about the size and figure of a horse-shoe, whose edges were fringed with black feathers. The other end was forked, having the points of various lengths. The feathers were ranged in two rows, in square compartments, and produced a pleasing effect. They had been first fixed upon some of the cloth of the island, and then sewed to the upper end of the pendant which Captain Wallis had left flying on shore, the first time of his arrival at Matavai. The priests pronounced a long prayer, relative to this part of the ceremony; and after it was ended, the badge of royalty was folded up with great care, and put into the cloth.

The other bundle, which we have already mentioned under the name of the ark, was next opened, at one end; but our party were not permitted to approach near enough to examine its mysterious contents. The intelligence they obtained respecting it was, that the *Eatooa*, (or rather what is supposed to represent him) was concealed in it. This sacred repository is composed of the twisted fibres of the husk of the cocoa-nut; and its

its figure is roundish, with one end considerably thicker than the other.

The pig that had been killed was by this time cleaned, and its entrails taken out. These happened to have many of those convulsive motions, which frequently appear, in different parts, when an animal is killed; and this was considered as a very favourable omen to the intended expedition. After being exposed for some time, the entrails were carried and laid down before the priests. While one of them prayed, another closely inspected the entrails, and continued turning them gently with a stick. Having been sufficiently examined, they were thrown into the fire. The sacrificed pig, and its liver, heart, &c. were now put upon the scaffold where the dog had been deposited; and then all the feathers, except the ostrich plume, being enclosed in the ark, an end was put to the whole solemnity.

Four double canoes remained upon the beach, all the morning, before the place of sacrifice. A small platform, covered with palm-leaves, fastened in mysterious knots, was fixed on the fore-part of each of these canoes; and this also is called a *morai*. Some plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, fish, and other articles, lay upon each of these naval *morais*. The natives said, that they belonged to the *Eatooa*, and that they were to attend the fleet that was to be sent out against *Eimeo*.

The

The unfortunate victim, offered on this occasion, was, to appearance, a middle-aged man, and was one of the lowest class of the people. But it did not appear that they had fixed upon him on account of his having committed any particular crime, that deserved death. It is certain, however, that they usually select such guilty persons for their sacrifices, or else, vagabonds, who have no visible way of procuring an honest livelihood. Our gentlemen having examined the appearance of the body of the unhappy sufferer, now offered up to the object of these people's worship, observed, that it was bloody about the head and face, and much bruised upon the right temple, which denoted the manner in which he had been killed. And they were informed, that he had been knocked on the head with a stone.

The wretches who are destined to suffer on these occasions, are never previously apprized of their fate. Whenever any one of the principal chiefs deems a human sacrifice necessary, on any great emergency, he fixes upon the victim; and then dispatches some of his trusty servants, who fall upon him suddenly, and either stone him to death, or beat out his brains with a club. The sovereign is next acquainted with it, whose presence is said to be absolutely requisite at the solemn rites that follow: and, indeed, on the late occasion, Otoo bore a capital part. The solemnity itself is termed *Poore Eree*, or the prayer of the

the chief; and the victim is called *Taata-taboo*, or consecrated man.

The *morai*, where the late sacrifice was offered, is always appropriated for the burial of the king of the whole island, and likewise of his family, and some other persons of distinguished rank. It differs little, except in extent, from the common *morais*. Its principal part is a large oblong pile of stones, about thirteen feet in height, and contracted towards the top, with a quadrangular area on each side, loosely paved with pebbles, under which the bones of the chiefs are deposited. Not far from the end nearest the sea, is the place of sacrifice, where is a very large *whatta*, or scaffold, on which the offerings of fruits, and other vegetables, are placed; but the animals are laid on a smaller one, and the human sacrifices are interred under the pavement. There are several reliques scattered about the place; such as small stones raised in various parts of the pavement, some with bits of cloth fastened round them, others entirely covered with it; and, upon the side of the large pile, fronting the area, are a great number of pieces of carved wood, in which their gods are supposed to reside occasionally. There is a heap of stones, at one end of the large scaffold, with a sort of platform on one side. On this they deposit all the skulls of the human sacrifices, which they take up after they have remained under ground for some months.

Just above them, many of the carved pieces of wood are placed; and here the *mare*, and the other bundle, which was supposed to contain the god *Ooro*, were laid, during the celebration of the late solemn rites.

It is probable, that this barbarous custom of offering human victims, prevails in all, or most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, however distant from each other some of them may be. And though we should suppose, that not more than one person is sacrificed at one time, either at Otaheite, or other islands, yet these occasions, in all probability, occur so frequently, as to make a terrible havock of the human species; for Captain Cook reckoned no less than forty-nine skulls, of former victims, lying before the *morai*, at Attahooroo; and as none of those skulls appeared to have suffered any considerable change, or decay, from the weather, it may be inferred, that but a short time had elapsed since these victims had been offered. This horrid practice, though no consideration whatever can make it cease to be detestable, might, perhaps, be thought less detrimental, in some respects, if it contributed to impress any awe for the Deity, or veneration for religion, upon the minds of the spectators. But this was so far from being the case on the late occasion, that though a vast multitude of people had assembled at the *morai*, they shewed very little reverence for what was transacting.

And

And Omai happening to arrive, after the ceremonies had begun, many of the islanders thronged round him, and were engaged, for the remaining part of the time, in making him recount some of his adventures; to which they listened with great eagerness of attention, regardless of the solemn offices which their priests were then performing. Indeed, the priests themselves, except the one who sustained the principal part, either from their being familiarized to such objects, or from their reposing no great degree of confidence in the efficacy of their religious institutions, maintained very little of that solemnity which is necessary to give to acts of devotion their proper effect. Their habit was but an ordinary one; they conversed together with great familiarity; and the only attempt they made to preserve decorum, was by exerting their authority, to prevent the populace from encroaching on the very spot where the rites were performed, and to suffer our gentlemen, as strangers, to come forward. They were, however, very candid in the answers which they gave to any interrogatories that were put to them, with regard to this inhuman institution. And, particularly, on being asked, what was the design of it, they replied, that it was an ancient custom, and was highly agreeable to their god, who came and fed upon the sacrifices; in consequence of which, he granted their petitions. It was then objected, that he

- 4

certainly

certainly did not feed on these, as he was neither observed to do it, nor were the bodies of the sacrificed animals soon consumed; and that as to the corpse of a human victim, they prevented his feeding on that, by interring it. In answer to these objections, they gave it as their opinion, that he came in the night, invisibly, and fed only on the soul, or immaterial part; which (these people say) remains about the place of sacrifice, till the carcase of the victim is totally wasted by putrefaction.

Human sacrifices are not the only barbarous custom that still prevails amongst the inhabitants of Otaheite, though, in many other respects, they have emerged from the brutal manners of savage life. Besides cutting out the jaw bones of their enemies slain in battle, which they carry about with them as trophies, they, in some measure, offer up their bodies to the *Eatooa*. Soon after an engagement, in which they have come off victorious, they collect all the dead, and bring them to the *morai*, where, with great form and ceremony, they dig a large hole, and bury them all in it, as so many offerings to their divinities.

They treat, in a different manner, their own chiefs that fall in battle. Their late king, Tootaha, Tubourai-tamaide, and another chief, who were all slain in an engagement with those of Tiaraboo, were brought to the *morai* at Attahooroo. There the priests cut out their bowels before

fore the great altar; and their dead bodies were afterwards interred in three different places, near the great pile of stones above-mentioned; and the common men, who lost their lives in the battle, were all buried in one hole, at the foot of the same pile. This was performed the day after the battle, with much pomp and formality, amidst a numerous concourse of people, as a thanksgiving offering to the Deity, for the victory they had obtained the preceding day. The vanquished, in the mean time, had taken refuge in the mountains, where they remained upwards of a week, till the fury of the victors began to abate. A treaty was then set on foot, by which it was agreed, that Otoo should be proclaimed king of the whole island; and the solemnity of investing him with the *maro*, or badge of royalty, was performed at the same *morai*, with great magnificence.

## C H A P. III.

*Re-embark for Matavai—Conference with Towha respecting the human Sacrifice—Description of the Heevas—Dinner given by Omai—Exhibition of Fire-works—Remarkable Method of making a Present of Cloth—Manner of preserving, for many Months, the dead Body of a Chief—Another human Sacrifice offered—Riding on Horseback, Matter of great Astonishment to the Natives—Otoo's great Attention to prevent Thefts, &c.—Animals given to him by Captain Cook—Audience given to Etary, &c.—Manner of fighting two War-Canoes—Naval Power, &c.*

**A**T the close of the very extraordinary scene, exhibited at the *marai*, and particularly described in the last chapter, our party embarked about twelve o'clock, in order to return to Matavai; and, in their way, paid a visit to Towha, who had continued in the little island, where they met him the preceding day. Some conversation on public affairs passed between Otoo and him; and the latter entreated Captain Cook, once more, to join them as an ally, in their war against Eimeo. By his positive refusal he entirely lost the good opinion of this chief.

Before

Before they separated, he interrogated our gentlemen concerning the solemnity, at which they had been present; and asked, particularly, if it answered their expectations; what opinion they entertained of its efficacy; and whether such acts of worship were frequent in their own country? They had been silent during the celebration of the horrid ceremony; but, as soon as it was completed, freely expressed their sentiments upon the subject, to Otoo, and his attendants; consequently Captain Cook did not conceal his detestation of it, in this conversation with Towha. Exclusive of the barbarity of the bloody custom, he urged the unreasonableness of it, alledging that such a sacrifice, instead of making the *Eatooa* propitious to their nation, would excite his vengeance; and that, from this very circumstance, he concluded, that their intended expedition against Maheine would be unsuccessful. This was proceeding to great lengths upon conjecture; but there was little danger of being mistaken; for, respecting this war, there were three parties in this island, one violent for it, another perfectly indifferent about it; and the third avowed supporters of Maheine, and his cause. Under these circumstances, it was not probable that such a plan of military operations would be settled, as could insure success. Omai acted as interpreter, in conveying the Captain's sentiments to Towha, on the subject of the late horrid sacrifice; and he supported his ar-

guments with such spirit, that the chief appeared to be extremely angry; especially, on being informed, that if he had taken away the life of a man in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from an ignominious death. Upon this, he exclaimed, *maeno! maeno!* (vile! vile!) and would not hear a syllable more about it. Many of the natives were present at this debate; particularly the attendants and servants of Towha; and when Omai mentioned the punishment that would in England be inflicted upon the greatest man, if he dared to kill the meanest servant, they listened very attentively; and perhaps, on this subject, they thought differently from their master.

Leaving Towha, our gentlemen proceeded to Oparre, where Otoo solicited them to pass the night. They landed in the evening; and, on their way to his habitation, had an opportunity of observing how these people amuse themselves, in their private *beevas*. They saw about a hundred of them sitting in a house; in the midst of whom were two women, and an old man behind each of them, beating gently upon a drum; and the women, at intervals, singing with great softness and delicacy. The assembly were very attentive, and seemed, as it were, absorbed in the pleasure the music gave them; few of them taking any notice of the strangers, and the performers never once ceasing. When the party arrived

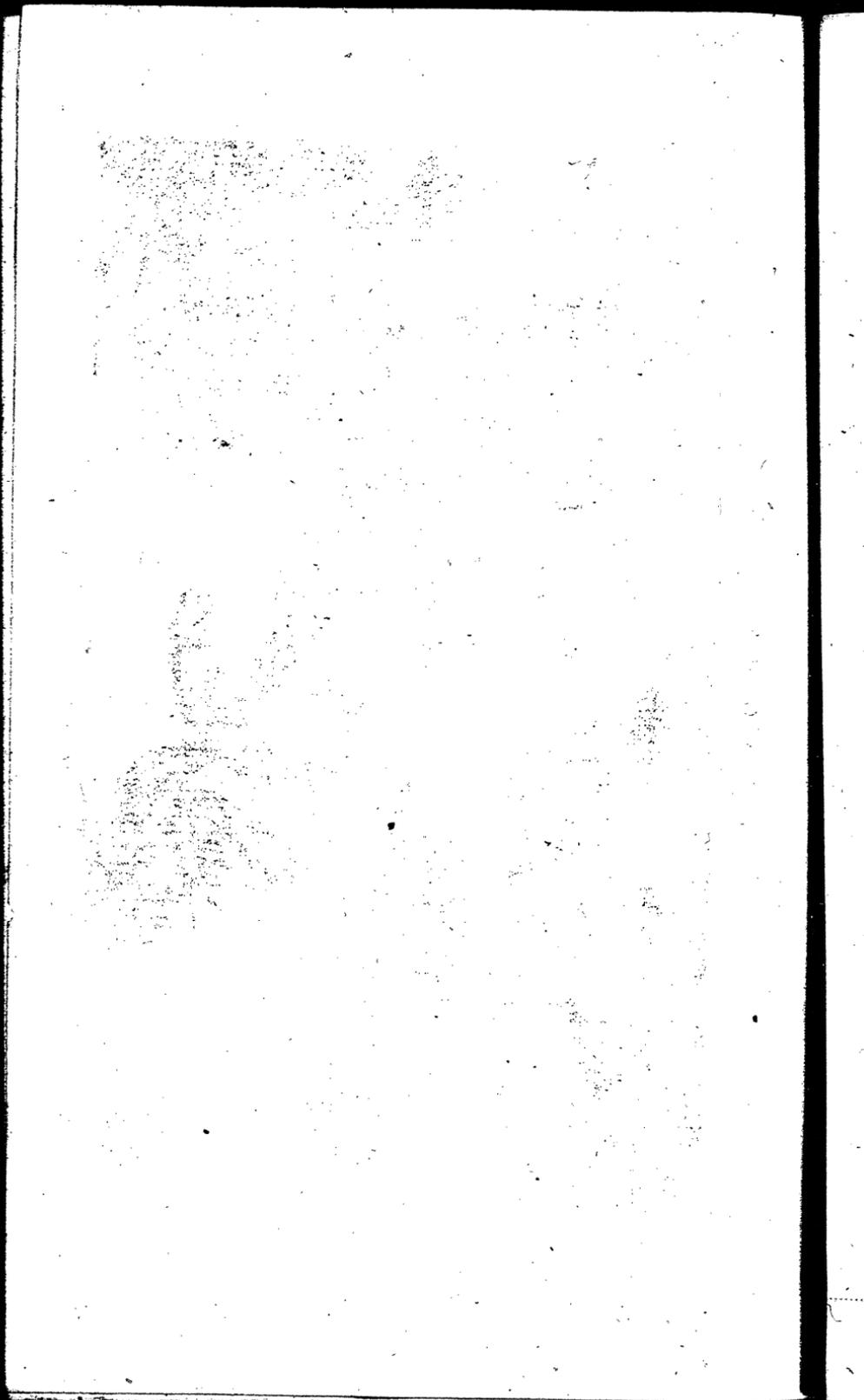
at

*Coak's Voyage, Octavo Edition.*



A DANCE IN TAHITI.

*David, Sculp.*



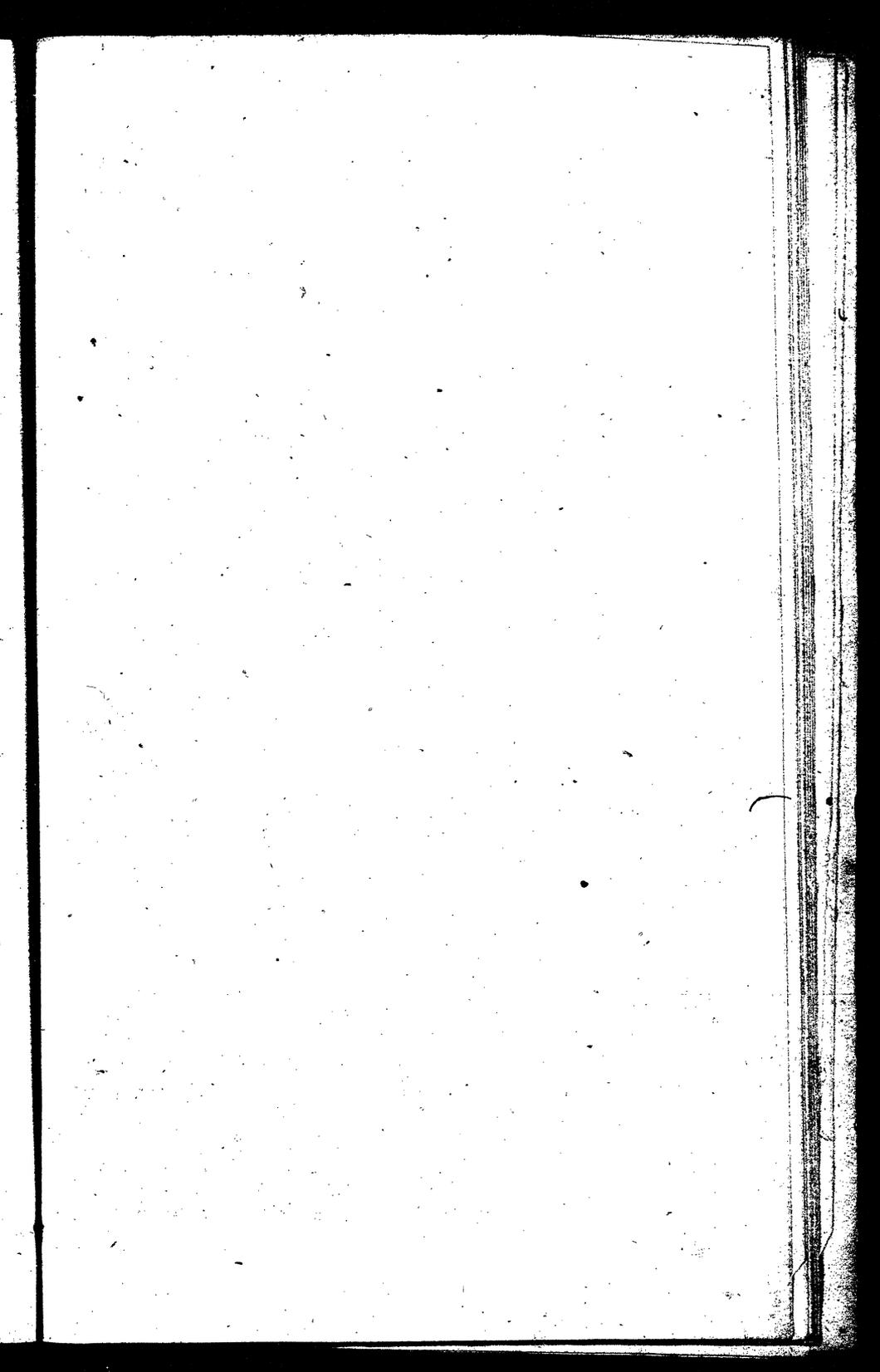
at Otoo's house, it was almost dark. Here they were entertained with one of their public *beevas*, or plays, in which his three sisters represented the principal characters. This they call a *beeva raä*, and no person is suffered to enter the house or area, where it is exhibited. This is always the case, when the royal sisters are the performers. Their dress, on this occasion, was truly elegant and picturesque, and they acquitted themselves in a very distinguished manner; though some comic interludes, wherein four men were the performers, seemed to afford greater entertainment to the audience, which was numerous. The Captain and his companions proceeded, the next morning, to Matavai, leaving Otoo at Oparre; but his mother, sisters, and many other women, attended the Captain on board, and Otoo followed a short time after.

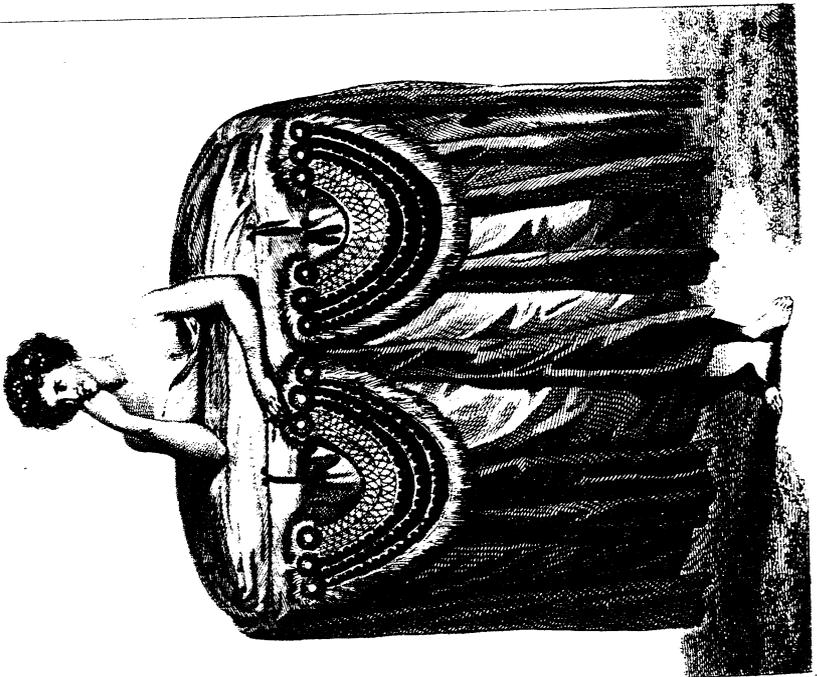
While Otoo and Captain Cook had been absent from the ships, they had been sparingly supplied with fruit, and had not many visitors. After their return, we had abundance of company and provisions. On the 4th, a party of us, among whom was Otoo, dined ashore with Omai, who provided excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, pork, and puddings. Dinner being over, Captain Cook accompanied Otoo back to his dwelling, where he found all his servants busy, in getting a quantity of provisions ready for him. Amongst other articles, there was a large hog,

which they killed in his presence. There was also a large pudding; the whole process in making which the Captain saw. It was composed of bread-fruit, plantains, taro, and palm or pandanus-nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of the juice of cocoa-nut-kernels, was put into a kind of wooden tray. The other articles, hot from the oven, were put into this vessel; together with some hot stones, in order to make the contents simmer. Three or four persons were employed in stirring up the several ingredients, till they were perfectly incorporated, and the juice of the cocoa-nut was turned to oil; and the whole mass, at last, was nearly of the consistency of a hasty-pudding. The hog being baked, and the pudding being made, they, together with two living hogs, some bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts, were sent on board the Captain's ship in a canoe, followed by him and all the royal family.

A young ram, of the Cape-breed, that had been lambed, and carefully brought up on-board Captain Cook's ship, was killed by a dog the following day. This was the more to be regretted, as it was the only one of that breed that we had; and only one of the English breed was now remaining.

On the 7th, in the evening, we exhibited some fire-works before a vast concourse of people, some of whom were highly entertained, but the greater





greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; infomuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to see the whole of the entertainment. What concluded the business, was a table-rocket. It flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in an instant; even the most resolute amongst them now fled with precipitation.

A party of us dined, the next day, with Oedidee, on fish and pork. The hog, which weighed about thirty pounds, was alive, dressed, and upon the table, within the hour. Soon after we had dined, Otoo appeared, and enquired of Captain Cook, if his belly was full? who answered in the affirmative. "Then come along with me," said Otoo. The Captain accordingly attended him to his father's, where he saw several people employed in dressing two girls, with fine cloth, after a very singular fashion. There were several pieces of cloth, and the one end of each piece was held over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their bodies, under the arm-pits. The upper ends were then suffered to fall down, and hang in folds to the ground, over the other. Round the outside of all, were then wrapped several pieces of cloth of various colours, which considerably increased the size; it being five or six yards in circuit; and the weight of this singular attire, was as much as the poor girls could well support. To each were

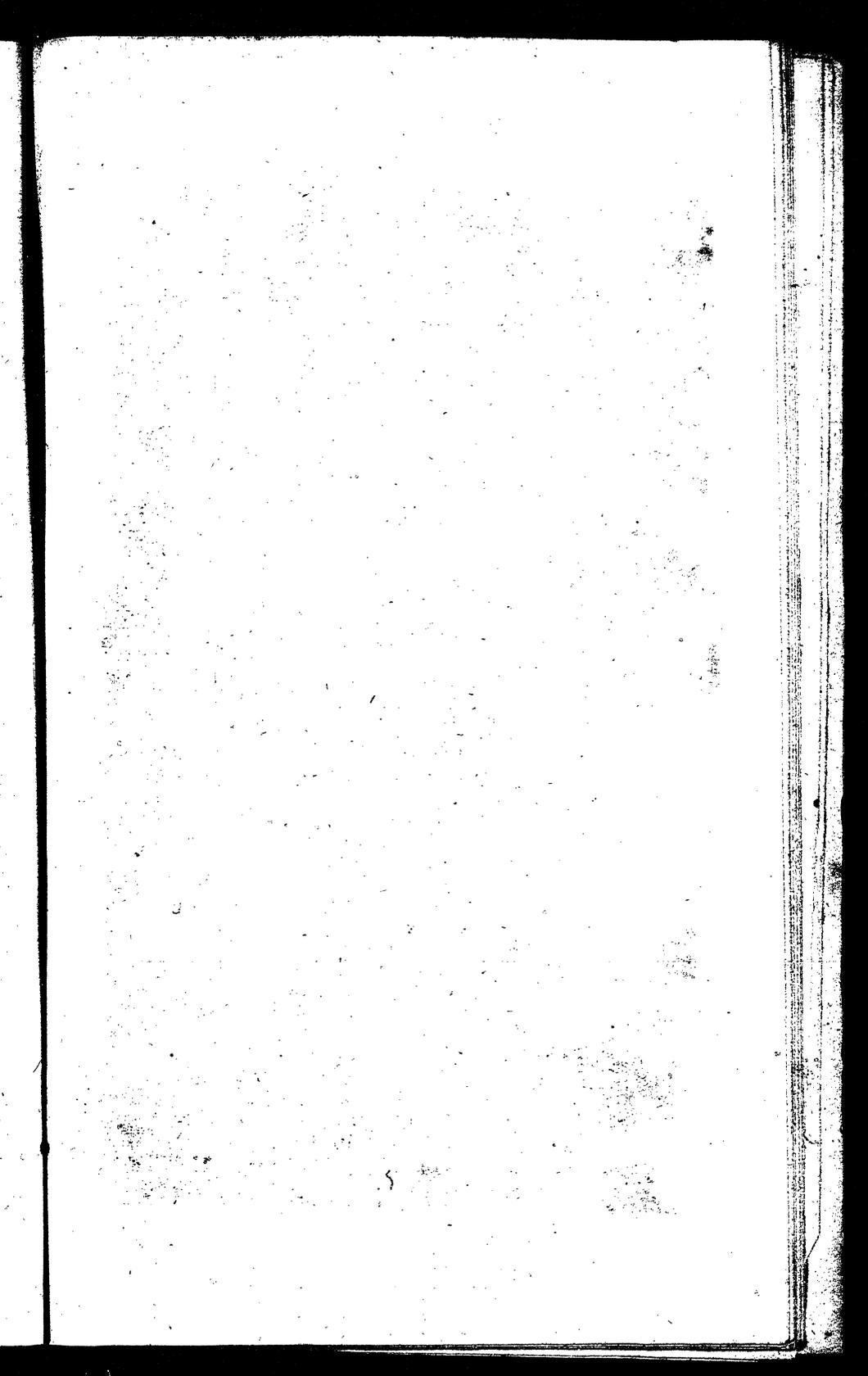
A a 4

hung

hung two *taames*, or breast-plates, in order to embellish the whole, and give it a picturesque appearance. Thus equipped, they were taken on board the ship, together with several hogs, and a quantity of fruit, which, together with this cloth, was a present to Captain Cook from Otoo's father. Those who are dressed in this manner, are called *atee*; but, this ceremony is never performed, except where large presents of cloth are to be made. We never saw it practised upon any other occasion; but both Captain Cook and Captain Clerke had cloth presented to them afterwards, wrapped round the bearers in the same manner. The next day, Captain Cook received a present of five hogs, and some fruit, from Otoo; and one hog, and some fruit from each of his sisters. Other provisions were also in great plenty. Great quantities of mackarel had been caught here by the natives, for two or three successive days; some of which were sold on board the ships.

Otoo was equally attentive to supply our wants, and contribute to our amusement. On the 10th, he treated a party of us at Oparre, with a play. His three sisters were the performers, and their dresses were new and elegant, much more so than we had met with in any of these islands.

The principal object, however, that the Captain had now in view, in going to Oparre, was to see an embalmed corpse, near the residence of Otoo. On enquiry, he found it to be the remains



*Cook's Voyage, Second Edition.*



*of the (BANK) of THE GULF, as proposed after C. DE. P. in C. 1811.*

mains of Tee, a chief whom he well knew, when he last visited this island. It was lying in an elegant *toopapao*, in all respects similar to that at Oheitepeha, in which the remains of Waheia-dooa are deposited. We found the body was under cover, within the *toopapao*, and wrapped up in cloth. At the Captain's desire, the person who had the care of it, brought it out, and placed it on a kind of bier, so as to give a perfect view of it; but we were not admitted within the pales that enclosed the *toopapao*. The corpse having been thus exhibited, he ornamented the place with mats and cloths, disposed in such a manner as to produce a pleasing effect. The body was entire in every part; and putrefaction seemed hardly to be begun, not the least disagreeable smell proceeding from it; though this is one of the hottest climates, and Tee had been above four months dead. There was, indeed, a shrinking of the muscular parts and eyes, but the hair and nails were in their original state, and the several joints were pliable. On enquiry into their method of preserving their dead bodies, we were informed, that, soon after they are dead, they are disembowelled, by drawing the intestines, and other *viscera*, out at the *anus*, and the whole cavity is stuffed with cloth; that when any moisture appeared, it was immediately dried up, and the bodies rubbed all over with perfumed cocoa-nut-oil; which, frequently repeated, pre-

served them several months; after which they moulder away gradually. Omai informed us, that the bodies of all their great men, who die a natural death, are thus preserved; and are exposed to public view for a very considerable time after. At first, they are exhibited every fine day; afterwards, the intervals become greater and greater; and, at last, they are very seldom to be seen.

We quitted Oparre in the evening, leaving Otoo, and all the royal family. The Captain saw none of them till the 12th; when all, except the chief himself, honoured him with a visit. He was gone, they said, to Attahooroo, to assist at another human sacrifice, sent by the chief of Tiaraboo to be offered up at the *morai*. This second instance, within so short a period, was a melancholy proof, that the victims of this bloody superstition are very numerous amongst this humane people. The Captain would have been present at this sacrifice also, had he been earlier informed of it, but now it was too late. For the same reason, he omitted being present at a public transaction, at Oparre, the preceding day, when Otoo, with great solemnity, restored to the adherents of the late king Tootaha, the lands and possessions, of which, after his death, they had been deprived.

Otoo returned the next evening, from exercising the most disagreeable of his royal duties; and,

and, the next day, being honoured with his company, the Captains Cook and Clerke, mounted on horseback, and rode round the plain of Matavai, to the astonishment of a vast train of spectators. Once or twice, before this, Omai had, indeed, attempted to get on a horse; but he had as often fallen off, before he could contrive to seat himself properly; this was, therefore, the first time they had seen any body on horseback. What the Captains had begun, was repeated daily, by one or another of our people; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued unabated. After they had seen the use that was made of these animals, they were exceedingly delighted with them; and we were of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the novelties that their European visitors had carried amongst them.

The next day, Etary, or Olla, the god of Bôlabola, removed from the neighbourhood of Matavai, to Oparre, attended by several sailing canoes. Otoo, we were told, did not approve of his being so near our station; where his people could more conveniently invade our property. Otoo, it must be acknowledged, took every prudent method to prevent thefts and robberies; and it was principally owing to his regulations, that so few were committed. He had erected a small house or two, behind our post; and two others near our tents, between the river and the sea.

sea. Some of his own people continually kept watch in all these places; and, as his father usually resided on Matavai Point, we were, in a manner, surrounded by them. They not only defended us in the night from thieves, but they had an opportunity of observing every thing that passed in the day; and were ready to receive contributions from such girls, as were privately connected with our people, which was usually done every morning; so that the measures he had taken to secure our safety, answered the more essential purpose of enlarging his own profits.

Otoo acquainted Captain Cook, that his presence was required at Oparre, where an audience was to be given to the great personage from Bolabola, and begged he would accompany him thither. The Captain readily consented, expecting to meet with something deserving his notice. Accordingly, they set out on the 16th, attended by Mr. Anderson. Nothing, however, occurred, that was interesting or curious. Etary and his followers presented some coarse cloth and hogs to Otoo, with some ceremony, and a set speech. After this, a consultation was held between them and some other chiefs, about their expedition to Eimeo. Etary, at first, disapproved of it; but his objections were at length overruled. It appeared, indeed, the next day, that it was too late to deliberate upon this business; for, in the evening, a messenger arrived with intelligence,

telligence, that there had been some skirmishes, but that the loss or advantage, on either side, was inconsiderable.

Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson, and Omai, in the morning of the 18th, went again to Oparre, accompanied by Otoo; taking with them the sheep which the Captain intended to leave upon the island. They consisted of an English ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes; all which he made a present of to Otoo. All the three cows had taken the bull; he therefore thought it advisable to divide them, and carry some to Ulietea. With this view, he ordered them to be brought before him, and proposed to Etary, that if he would leave his bull with Otoo, he should have this, and one of the cows. To this proposal, Etary, at first, started some objections; but, at last, agreed to it; however, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers opposed the making any exchange whatever.

The Captain, upon this, suspecting that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the present, only to please him, dropped the idea of an exchange; and finally determined to leave them all with Otoo; whom he strictly enjoined not to suffer them to be removed from Oparre, till he should have got a stock of young ones; which he might then dispose of to his friends, or send to the neighbouring islands.

This

This matter being settled, our gentlemen left Etary and his party, and attended Otoo to another place, not far distant, where they found the servants of a chief, waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, as a present from their master to the king. These were delivered with the usual ceremonies, and an harangue, in which the speaker enquired after the health of Otoo, and of all his principal people. This compliment was re-echoed in the name of Otoo, by one of his ministers; and then the dispute with Eimeo was formally discussed. The deputies of this chief were advocates for prosecuting the war with vigour, advising Otoo to offer a human sacrifice on the occasion. A chief, who constantly attended the person of Otoo, opposed it, seemingly with great strength of argument. The Captain was now confirmed in his opinion, that Otoo never entered heartily into the spirit of this war. He received repeated messages from Towha, urging him to hasten to his assistance.

Having dined with Otoo, our party returned to Matavai, leaving him at Oparre. This day, and the 19th, we were very sparingly supplied with fruit. Otoo being informed of this, he and his brother, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, came from Oparre, with a large supply for both ships. All the royal family came the next day with presents, so that we now had more provisions than we could consume.

Our

Our water being all on board, and every thing put in order, the Captain began to think of quitting the island, that he might have a sufficient time for visiting others in this neighbourhood. We therefore removed our observatories and instruments from the shore, and bent the sails.

Early the next morning, Otoo came on board to inform Captain Cook, that the war canoes of Matavai, and of three other districts, were going to join those belonging to Oparre, and that part of the island; and that there would be a general review there. The squadron of Matavai was soon after in motion; and after parading for some time about the bay, assembled ashore, near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a survey of them.

What they call their war canoes, which are those with stages, on which they fight, amount to about sixty in number; there are nearly as many more of a smaller size. The Captain was ready to have attended them to Oparre; but the chiefs soon after formed a resolution, that they would not move till the next day. This appeared to be a fortunate delay, as it afforded him some opportunity of getting some insight into their manner of fighting. He therefore desired Otoo to give orders, that some of them should go through the necessary manoeuvres. Accordingly, two of them were ordered out into the bay; in one of which Otoo, Capt. Cook, and Mr. King, embarked,

6 and

and Omai went on board the other. As soon as they had got sufficient sea-room, they faced, advanced, and retreated by turns, as quick as their rowers could paddle. In the mean time, the warriors on the stages flourished their weapons, and played a variety of antics, which could answer no other purpose than that of rousing their passions, to prepare them for the onset. Otoo stood by the side of one stage, giving the necessary orders, when to advance, and when to retreat. Great judgment, and a very quick eye, seemed requisite in this department, to seize every advantage, and to avoid every disadvantage. At length, after several times advancing to, and retreating from each other, the two canoes closed, stage to stage; and after a severe, though short conflict, all the troops on Otoo's stage were supposed to be killed, and Omai and his associates boarded them, when instantly Otoo, and all the paddlers in his canoe, leaped into the sea, as if reduced to the necessity of preserving their lives by swimming.

According to Omai's information, their naval engagements are not always conducted in this manner. They sometimes lash the two vessels together, head to head, and fight till all the warriors on one side or the other are killed. But this close combat is never practised, except when the contending parties are determined to conquer or die. Indeed, one or the other must infallibly happen;

happen; for they never give quarters, unless it be to reserve their prisoners for a more cruel death the day following.

All the power and strength of these islands lie solely in their navies. A general engagement on land we never heard of here; and all their decisive battles are fought on the water. When the time and place of battle are fixed upon by both parties, the preceding day and night are spent in feasting and diversions. When the morning approaches, they launch the canoes, make every necessary preparation, and, with the day, begin the battle; the fate of which, in general, decides the dispute. The vanquished endeavour to save themselves by a precipitate flight; and those who reach the shore fly, with their friends, to the mountains; for the victors, before their fury abates, spare neither the aged, nor women, or children. They assemble the next day, at the *morai*, to return thanks to the *eatooa* for the victory, and offer up the slain and the prisoners, as sacrifices. A treaty is then set on foot; and the conquerors usually obtain their own terms; by which large districts of land, and even whole islands, sometimes change their owners. Omai said he was once taken a prisoner by the men of Bolabola, and conducted to that island, where he and many others would have suffered death the next day, had they not been fortunate enough to escape in the night.

This mock-fight being over, Omai put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and, thus equipped, was paddled all along the shore of the bay, that every one might have a perfect view of him. His coat of mail, however, did not engage the attention of the multitude so much as was expected. The novelty was in a great degree lost upon some of them, who had seen a part of it before; and there were others, who had conceived such a dislike to Omai, from his folly and imprudence at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing that was exhibited by him, however singular and new.

THE END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

